

AN UNIVERSAL
GRAMMAR

OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,
ON
AN IMPROVED PLAN,

By NICOLAS HAMEL, Graduate in the University of CAEN
and Rector of the town of l'AIGLE in Normandy.

K.



LONDON,

From the FRENCH PRINTING-OFFICE No. 38 King
Street Golden Square,

Printed for the AUTHOR and sold by Th. EVANS 46
Pater-noster-row. LOWNDES 77 Fleet-Street. HAMILTON
Beech-Street Finsbury. SHEPPERSON & REYNOLDS 137
Oxford Street. OWEN 168 Piccadilly. BOOSEY 4 Broad Street
Royal Exchange. LINDSELL & Co. 87 Wimpole Street.
DULONCHAMP 62 King Street Golden Square. DULAU &
Co. 107 Wardour Street Soho. FLETCHER & PRINCE at
Oxford. BURDON at Winchester.

1796.

AN UNIVERSTY

GRAND

١٥

THE FRANCHISE LAW

20



ADVERTISEMENT.

Mr. HAMEL has written a book of exercises for the application of the principles explained in this grammar, it contains about a page of sentences adapted to each rule in particular, and at the end of every chapter is a recapitulatory exercise. The sentences are taken from good authors and are altogether instructive and entertaining; at the end of this volume is a collection of dialogues on the most common subjects of conversation.

The price of the subscription for the book of exercise is three shillings, of which half is to be paid on subscribing and the remainder on the delivery of the book, which is ready and will be printed as soon as the number of subscriptions will be sufficient to defray half of the expenses. The subscriptions are received at the booksellers mentioned in the first page of this grammar.

N. B. There are already more than a hundred subscribers To the two volumes, their names and that of those who will do him the honour to patronise his work, will be printed at the head of the book of exercises.

ADVERTISMENT.

PREFACE.

EVERY Body confesses that the only sure, and at the same time the shortest method to attain the perfection of a language, is to study its principles after the most strict and exact rules of the grammar.

Conformably to this truth generally acknowledged and confirmed by a daily experience, I have composed this work on sound principles and exact definitions, and in order to promote as much as possible the learning of this useful tongue, now looked upon as universal, I have made a parallel of the french and english languages, which at the same time will confirm the English Student in the principles of this native tongue, greatly facilitate the understanding of the french rules, and point out the different genius of each language, with accuracy and precision.

In the first part of this grammar which has for its object the Pronunciation and Orthography, I treat of the sound of letters, vowels and consonants; the different sorts of accents, the proper manner of using them, and their effects upon vowels, are put in the clearest light, the use of the apostrophe and capital letters, the different sorts of punctuation and abbreviations, are treated in a method simple and concise but however so comprehensive, that I know not any thing which could be added on the same subject.

It seemed to me that it would be an encouragement for a Pupil, if he could easily treasure in his mind a great collection of words; this idea prompted me to consider the analogy of the two languages, and after a serious examination, I have established (page 21 and 22) four general rules by

which a scholar may in few lessons, and almost without any trouble learn several thousand french words.

The rules which I have given (page 27 and following) for the distinction of the gender of nouns are simple and comprehensive, the masculine substantives which cannot be reduced under any rule of terminations, are set in an alphabetical order; thus in a short time, one may perfectly gain this important point in which most Grammarians are very defective, and which many do not even attempt to explain.

The formation of the plural of nouns and of the feminine of adjectives is set in a new light (the first, page 35 & 36, and the second, page 39 & 40.)

On the verb I have been very extensive and methodical; having explained its nature and different species, I have fully conjugated a verb of each regular and irregular conjugations; to this explanation I have added (page 102 and 103) a new method grounded upon principles, by which all regular and irregular verbs may be learned with an uncommon facility.

Having explained the different parts of speech in the manner which seemed the most natural, simple and methodical, I proceed to the syntax in which I treat of the union, concord and disposition of words, in the same order as I did before of their nature, declension or conjugation.

This part as the most essential and difficult, I have explained at large in a series of clear, short and accurate rules for the most part illustrated by instructive examples from good authors. The principles depend successively on each other, and the knowledge of the preceding leads usually to the understanding of that which follows. The rules which I have given for the construction of the language, are set in a numerical order, and so disposed that they may be found, as easily as a word in a dictionary; advantage peculiar to this grammar.

The most difficult points of the language, such as the construction of pronouns, the different modes of negations, and interrogations, the distinction of tenses, the use of the subjunctive mood, the government of verbs &c. are particularly and fully explained.

This book is completed by an alphabetical series of the french verbs most in use, denoting at once, of what conju-

gation they are, and the case they govern, by which two great difficulties of the french will be removed.

My first object was to render this work fit for the use of schools and to adapt it to the capacities of youngest learners, that in beginning to learn french, they may begin it grammatically; for this purpose I have used my utmost endeavours to unite simplicity of method, with clearness and precision; I have in some measure succeeded in this point, and I may assert after experience, that most of the rules and principles of this grammar, may with the help of a good master, be understood and learnt by a child of six seven years of age; of this those will be easily convinced, who will attend to the natural order which exists in the different parts, of this work, to the precision of rules, to the clearness of expressions, and in a word to the whole composition which, according to the opinion of several learned Gentlemen, is executed on a plan new, simple and much improved.

N. B. *After all the pains that Mr. HAMEL has taken, and which he hopes have rendered his work correct in every essential point, he cannot expect it to be free from errors in the orthography of some english words. These he trusts will not be severely criticized in a first edition printed under circumstances which prevented the revision of the sheets by any Englishman. In a second edition, should the encouragement of the Public call for one; they shall be carefully corrected.*



AN
UNIVERSAL GRAMMAR
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

GRAMMAR is the art of reading, speaking, and writing correctly, that is, as learned Persons read, speak, or write: or according to the definition of a celebrated Author, Grammar, is the art of reducing into rules, the manner of speaking of a Nation.

A Grammar ought to treat of the sounds, and characters of a language, of the nature of words of which it is composed, and of the use which is to be made of them in speech.

As I propose to consider these objects in their different points of view, this work is naturally divided into three parts. The first has for object Pronunciation and Orthography. The second explains the nature or etymology of the different parts of speech, the declension of Nouns and Pronouns, and the conjugation of Verbs. The third contains a series of clear, short and accurate rules for the construction, or syntax of the language, and is completed by a collection of the most curious french idioms and proverbs.

PART I.

OF PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.

OF PRONUNCIATION. *

PRONUNCIATION is the right expression of the sounds and articulations of the words of a language.

The words are composed of syllables, and syllables of letters. The letters of the french tongue are the following, sounded pretty near as those under them are in english.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M,
aw, bay, cey, day. a, eff, gey, aush, e, kaw, el, m,
N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, X, Y, Z &.
n, o, pay, qu, er, s, tay, u, ex, egrec, zed, &.

These five *a, e, i, o, u*, are called vowels, because they form alone a distinct sound, we will speak of *y* hereafter.

The others are called consonants, because they cannot be sounded without a vowel.

When *i* and *u* precede another vowel, in the beginning of a word or of a syllable, they are most commonly conso-

* *As the English cannot learn of themselves, the french pronunciation, (because the true sounds cannot be conveyed by rules), and as they obtain easily this very essential point, with the help of a good master, a long treaty would be useless; therefore I will only give the rules, and make the observations, which to this day have been found the most clear, simple and useful, and which I have selected in the authors the most generally esteemed.*

nants; then *i* is written *j*, and *u* is written *v*, thus *i* is a vowel in *il*, and a consonant in *je*. *u* is a vowel in *union* and a consonant in *vanité*.

The vowels and consonants can be joined together as follows.

ba, be, bi, bo, bu,	ab, eb, ib, ob, ub,
ca, ce, ci, co, cu,	ac, ec, ic, oc, uc,
da, de, di, do, du,	ad, ed, id, od, ud,
fa, fe, fi, fo, fu,	af, ef, if, of, uf,
ga, ge, gi, go, gu,	ag, eg, ig, og, ug,
ha, he, hi, ho, hu,	ah, eh, ih, oh, uh,
la, le, li, lo, lu,	al, el, il, ol, ul,
ma, me, mi, mo, mu,	am, em, im, om, um,
na, ne, ni, no, nu,	an, en, in, on, un,
pa, pe, pi, po, pu,	ap, ep, ip, op, up,
qua, que, qui, quo, qu,	
ra, re, ri, ro, ru,	ar, er, ir, or, ur,
sa, se, si, so, su,	as, es, is, os, us,
ta, te, ti, to, tu,	at, et, it, ot, ut,
va, ve, vi, vo, vu,	av, ev, iv, ov, uv,
xa, xe, xi, xo, xu,	ax, ex, ix, ox, ux,
za, ze, zi, zo, zu,	az, ez, iz, oz, uz.

OF THE FRENCH ACCENTS. *

There are three different accents in french, called, *acute*, *grave* and *circumflex*.

The *acute* accent (´) gives to the vowel under it, an acute sound and makes that it is sounded the mouth almost shut, as in the words, *vérité*, *probité*, *prémédité*.

The *grave* accent (`) gives to the vowel under it, a broad and open sound, as in the words *accès*, *progrès*, *succès*.

The *circumflex* accent (^) gives a long sound to the vowel under it, as in the words, *dâme*, *âme*, *flâma*, *flûte*.

* I treat here of accents, because they give to the vowels several sounds which cannot be easily distinguished, without some notion of them.

THE ACUTE ACCENT IS USED,

1°. Over the *é* final, in a substantive which ends in *é* in french, & in *ty* in english; such are, *impiété* impiety, *charité* charity, *humanité* humanity &c.

2°. Over the first *é*, when there are two joined at the end of a noun, as in the words, *armée*, *pensée*, *année* *trouée*, *mausolée*.

3°. Over *é* followed by another vowel, which does not belong to the same syllable, as in the words, *réel*, *créateur*, *réunion*, *préoccupé* &c.

4°. Over the *é* final in the participles of all verbs of the first conjugation, that is, which end in *er* in the infinitive mood; such are, *parlé*, *chanté*, *acheté*, *aimé*, *donné*, from *parler*, *chanter*, *acheter*, *aimer*, *donner*.

5°. Over the *é* final of the first person singular of the indicative present in all verbs of the first conjugation, when they are used interrogatively, but not in other cases; thus we write, *je donne*, *je porte*, *je préfère* &c. without accent, and *donné-je*, *porté-je*, *préféré-je* with an accent.

6°. Most commonly over *é* in the syllables *é*, *dé*, *pré*, *ré* &c. *tré*, when they are the first of a word, example, *été*, *dépit*, *prélude*, *répéter*, *trésor*.

7°. Over the *é* which must be sounded acute, whether it be in the beginning, the middle, or the end of a word, example, *prémédité*.

THE GRAVE ACCENT IS USED,

1°. On the open *è*, followed by the final *s*, as in the words *auprès*, *exprès*, *progrès* &c.; but practice alone can teach when *e* is open or not.

2°. Over *à* preposition to distinguish it from *a* verb, example, *il y a moins de gloire à vaincre un ennemi qu'à lui pardonner quand on l'a vaincu*.

3°. Over *là* adverb, to distinguish it from *la* article or pronoun, example, *où la vertu finit, là le vice commence*; where virtue ends, there vice begins.

4°. On *dès* preposition or conjunction to distinguish it from *des* article, example, *dès que j'aurai de l'argent, j'achèterai des livres*; as soon I have money, I will buy books.

THE CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT IS USED,

1°. On the penultima vowel of the first and second persons plural, of the preterite of the indicative, in all verbs regular and irregular; example, *nous parlâmes, vous parlâtes; nous agâmes, vous agâtes; nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes &c.*

Some authors put it also over the third person plural of the same tense, and some others do not: for me I adopt the opinion of the first; because that final is always long, thus I write, *ils parlèrent, ils agirent, ils reçurent*, with an accent.

2°. On the last vowel of the third person singular of the preterite subjunctive, but not of the preterite indicative, thus we write, *il agit, il fit, il vendit, il reçut* without accent in the preterite indicative; and *il agit, il fit, il vendit, il reçût* with a circumflex accent in the preterite subjunctive.

3°. On the syllables which are long, and were formerly written with an *s*; such are *bonnôte, tempête, impôt, gîte &c.*

4°. On *dû* participle of *devoir*, to distinguish it from *du* article. On *crû* participle of *croître*, to distinguish it from *cru* participle of *croire*. On *sûr* adjective, to distinguish it from *sur* proposition as; *je suis sûr que le livre est sur la table.*

5°. Over *oi* through the whole conjugation, of the verbs which have their infinitive in *ôtre*, as *croître, paroître, disparaître, connoître, &c.* That *oi* is sounded as an *è* grave in all the tenses and persons of verbs, which have more than two syllables in the infinitive mood.

The other circumstances in which these accents must be used in french, cannot be explained by any general rules.

OF VOWELS.

When the vowels have an accent, they have a sound either acute, open or long, according as the accent is acute, grave or circumflex.

When they have no accent, they keep generally their natural sound, that is, the sound we have given them in the alphabet, except *e* which is often mute, at the end of a word of several syllables, such as *modestie, justice, il éludie &c.* and also in the future and conditional of many verbs, thus *je serai, je serois, je commencerai, je commencerois, je prierai, je prierois, are*

pronounced pretty near as if they were written, *je commen-
crai, je commencerois, je prirai, je prirois.*

Y has the sound of an *i* simple, between two consonants; thus the words *mystère, asyle* are pronounced, as if they were written *mistère, asile.*

When *Y* is between two vowels, it has usually the sound of *ii*: thus, *essayer, employer,* are pronounced, as if they were written, *essaiier, emploiier.*

OF DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is the meeting of two or more vowels in the same syllable. They are sounded in french as followe.

1°. *AO* is sounded like an *a* in the words *paon, paone, cock* or hen peacock; and like an *o* in the words *aoriste, an aorist, taon* a dun-fly, *août* august.

2°. *EAI* and *AI* are sounded like an *é* acute in the preterite of all verbs of the first conjugation, thus *je parlai, je mangeai, je donnai, je changeai* &c. are pronounced as if they were written, *je parlé, je mangé, je donné, je changé.*

3°. *AI, EAI, AIE,* in the middle or at the end of nouns are sounded pretty near, as an *è* with a grave accent, such are the words *maison, démangeaison, baie, plaie, &c.*

4°. *OI* and *EOI* have the sound of an *è* grave in the imperfect and conditional of verbs, thus, *j'aimois, j'aimerois, j'avois, j'aurais, je voulois, je voudrois* &c. are pronounced nearly as if they were written, *j'aimès, j'avès, je voulès.*

They are sounded in one emission of voice like *oi* of *moille,* in the words ending in *oi, oie, oir, oire;* such are the words *moi, emploi, savoie, vouloir, oratoire, &c.*

5°. *IE* is sounded like an *i,* and *ue* like an *u,* in the different tenses and persons of the verbs, which end in *ier* or *uer* in the infinitive present. Thus, *je prie, je prierai, je prierois,* are pronounced, *je prirai, je prirois,* and *je remue, je remuerai, il remueroit,* are pronounced as if they were written, *je remurai, il remuroit.*

6°. *AU* and *EAU* at the end of a word, have the sound of *ô* long, thus, *couteau, chapeau,* are pronounced, *couth, chaps.*

7°. *GEA, GEO, GEURE* without accent over *e,* are always sounded *ja, jo, jure;* thus, *George, changea, jugeons, gageure,*

are pronounced as if they were written, *Jorje, chanja, junctions, gajue*.

OF CONSONANTS.

RULE I.

When the following consonants *cc, dd, ff, ll, mm, nn, pp, rr, ss, tt*, meet together, we most frequently pronounce but one, thus *accabler, offenser, syllable, commettre, opposer, arroser, attirer, &c.* are pronounced as if they were written, *acabler, ofenser, syllable, cometre, qposer, aroser, atirer*.

CC & dd are both sounded, when they are followed by *e* or *i*, as in the words, *accès, accident, addition, reddition &c.*

LL, mm, nn, & rr are both sounded when they are preceded by an *i* at the beginning of a word, such are, *illégitime, immortel, innover, irrésistible*.

RULE II.

These 4 consonants *d, s, t, x*, being the final of a word, and followed by a vowel or *h* mute, without a comma between them, are usually sounded on the next word as follows:

D is sounded as a *t*; thus, *grand ami. Quand il viendra. Il attend à la porte*, are pronounced *grau tami. Quan til viendra. Il atten ta la porte*.

S is sounded as a *z* thus, *vous avez eu mes habits. Nous irons à Paris*, are pronounced, *vous zavez zeu mes habits. Nou zirons zà Paris*.

T is sounded on the next vowel thus, *Un savant homme. Je suis tout à vous. S'il vient à partir*, are pronounced, *un savan thome. Je suis tou tà vous, s'il vien tà partir*.

X is sounded like a *z* thus, *six amis, heureux événement* are pronounced, *si zamis, heureu zévenement*.

N in the words *en, on, bien, mien*, and in adjectives which end in *en* or *on* is sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel thus: *on apprend en étudiant avec méthode. mon bon ami, vous n'avez rien appris*, are pronounced as if they were written, *on n'apprend en étudiant avec méthode. mon bon n'ami, vous n'avez rien n'appris*.

When the letter *n* is the final of a substantive, it is not founded on the next word, though it begins with a vowel; thus the following, *une intention excellente, un pain exquis, un vin agréable*, are pronounced as written in two distinct words,

RULE III.

These consonants *b, c, d, f, g, h, p, s, t, x*, generally are not founded at the end of a word, when the next begins with a consonant; thus *plomb, clerc, pied, clef, rang, almanac, coup, méchants, talent, jaloux* &c. are pronounced as if they were written *plom, cler, pié, clé, ran, almana, cou* &c.

However these six *b, c, d, m, r* & *s* are strongly founded at the end of the names of heathens Gods, and of proper names of persons, taken from the bible or from the latins: thus *Job, Jacob, Isaac, David, Sem, César, Darius, Jupiter, Venus, Marins* &c. are pronounced *Jobe, Jacobe, Isaque* &c.

OBSERVATIONS UPON SOME CONSONANTS. *

C

C has the found of an *s* before *e* and *i*, thus *cela, ceci*, are founded *seci, sêla*. It has the found of an *s* before *a, o* & *u*, when it has a cedilla under it, and of a *k*, when not; thus *façade, françois, reçu* are pronounced *fassade, françois, ressu*; and *cabinet, cochon, cuisinier* are pronounced *kabinet, kuchon, kuifinier*.

C has often the found of a *k* before *l, r*, or *t*, thus *clair, crayon, actuel* are pronounced *klair, krayon, aktuel*.

C has the found of a *g* in *second, seconder, secret, secretaire, secretement*; it is not founded, when preceded by an *s* which belongs to the same syllable, thus *science, scène* &c. are pronounced *sience, sène*.

Ch are generally founded in french as *sh* in english.

Ch followed by *a, o, u*, or *r* are founded *ka, ko, ku, kr*, in the words taken from the greek or hebreu; thus *Achab, Chanaan, chrétien, eucharistie* &c. are pronounced *Akab, Kanaan, krétien, eukaristie*.

* The letters not mentioned hereafter, are founded as in the alphabet, except in cases expressed in the three preceding rules.

F

F final is sounded in the words *Juif, nef, actif, expressif, chef & vœuf*; it is not sounded in most of others, as we said before rule 3.

Neuf is pronounced *neuv*, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus *il y a neuf ans, dix neuf hommes*, are pronounced *il y a neu vans, dix neu hommes*.

G

G is sounded like *j* before *e* & *i* thus, *genou, gibier, mangeant*, are pronounced *jenou, jibier, manjant*.

G has a strong and harsh sound approaching *k*, when followed by *a, o, l, r, ua, ue*, or *non*; as in the words *gâteau, gosier, glorieux, grandir, guenon, brigua &c.* when *gn* do not begin a word, they are frequently sounded, *gni*, thus *agneau, compagnon, vous joignez, il regna &c.* are pronounced, as if they were written *agniau, compaignon, vous joigniez, il regnia*.

H

H is mute in the following words, and aspirated in others.

habile,	able.	herbe,	grass.
habiller,	to cloath.	herboriste,	herbalist.
habit,	a dress.	héréditaire,	hereditary.
habiter,	to inhabit.	héritier,	heir.
habitable,	inhabitable.	herbette,	grass.
habitude,	habit.	herbierre,	herb-woman.
habitué,	used.	hériter,	to inherit.
habituel,	habitual.	hérésie,	heresy.
haleine,	breath.	hérétique,	heretick.
hameçon,	a fish-hook.	hermétique,	chymistry.
harmonie,	harmony.	herminé,	ermine.
hasard,	chance.	hermitage,	hermitage.
hasarder,	to venture.	hermite,	an hermit.
hébété,	bock-head.	héroïne,	an heroine.
hébreu,	hebrew.	héroïque,	heroical.
hétacombe,	hetacomb.	hésiter,	to hesitate.
hégire,	begira.	héroïsme,	heroism.
hélicon,	helicon.	hésitation,	hesitation.
héliotrope,	turn-sle.	hétérodoxe,	heterodox.
hémisphère,	hemisphere.	hétérogène,	heterogeneous.
hémorragie,	hemorrhage.	heure,	hour.
herbage,	pasture.	hexagone,	hexagon.

B

héxametre,	<i>hexameter,</i>	horrible,	<i>horrid.</i>
hirondelle,	<i>swallow.</i>	hostie,	<i>victim.</i>
histoire,	<i>history.</i>	hostilité,	<i>hostility.</i>
historien,	<i>historian.</i>	hôte,	<i>landlord.</i>
hiver,	<i>winter.</i>	hôtesse,	<i>landlady.</i>
hiverner,	<i>to winter.</i>	hôtel,	<i>hotel.</i>
huit,	<i>eight.</i>	hôtellerie,	<i>inn.</i>
holocauste,	<i>sacrifice.</i>	huile,	<i>oil.</i>
homard,	<i>a great lobster.</i>	huitre,	<i>oyster.</i>
homélie,	<i>an homely.</i>	humanité,	<i>human-nature.</i>
homicide,	<i>homicide.</i>	humble,	<i>bumble.</i>
hommage,	<i>homage.</i>	humecter,	<i>to moisten.</i>
homme,	<i>man.</i>	humeur,	<i>humour.</i>
homogène,	<i>homogeneous.</i>	humidité,	<i>dampness.</i>
honnête,	<i>honest.</i>	humilier,	<i>to humble.</i>
honorer,	<i>to honour.</i>	hyperbole,	<i>hyperbole.</i>
honnêteté,	<i>honesty.</i>	hypocrite,	<i>hypocrite.</i>
honneur,	<i>honour.</i>	hypothèque,	<i>mortgage.</i>
honorable,	<i>honourable.</i>	hydre,	<i>hydra.</i>
honoraire,	<i>honorary.</i>	hydromel,	<i>mead.</i>
hopital,	<i>hospital.</i>	hypocrisie,	<i>hypocrisy.</i>
hopitalier,	<i>hospitable.</i>	hydropisie,	<i>dropsy.</i>
horison,	<i>horison.</i>	hymen,	<i>hymen.</i>
horloge,	<i>clock.</i>	hypothèse,	<i>hypothesis.</i>
horreur,	<i>horror.</i>	hyacinthe,	<i>hyacinth.</i>

There are some more words, in which *h* is mute, but they are so seldom used, that I have thought proper to omit them.

L

L preceded by *i* is ordinarily liquid, and founded *li*, thus *cuiller*, *vaillant*, are pronounced *cuilier*, *vailiant*.

M

M is founded as an *n*, when it is followed by *h*, *n* or *p*, thus *automne*, *ambition*, *comparer*, are pronounced, *autonne*, *ambition*, *conparer*.

P

Most commonly *p* is not founded at all, when it is followed by *t*, thus *exempt*, *baptême*, *compte*, are pronounced *exent*, *batême*, *conte*.

PH are always founded as an *f*, thus, *philippe*, *philosophie*, are pronounced *filipe*, *filosofie*.

Q

QU have the found of a *c* or a *k* thus, *quatre, qualité, marque*, are pronounced, *katre, kalité, mark*, & *qua, que, qui* are founded *coua, coue, coui* in many words, as in the following *équateur, liquéfaction, aquatique*, which are pronounced *écouateur, licouéfaction, acouatique*.

S

S has the found of a *z* between two vowels and after the syllable *tran*, thus *oser, raisonner, transuion* are pronounced *ozér, raizonner, tranzition*.

S has the hissing found of the alphabet in other circumstances, and particularly when it is double or begins a word as, *assiduité, superstition* &c.

T

TT are founded *fi* 1° in the words which end in *tial* or *tieux*, as *martial, captieux*, 2° in the substantives which end in *tien* or *tience*, as *patient, patience*, 3° in the words which end in *tie* or *tion* as *prophétie, action* &c.

FINALS LONG.

ée, as *pensée, thought*.
 ie, la *joie, jcy*.
 ue, la *vue, sight*.
 abre, un *fabre, sword*.
 aille, une *bataille, battle*.
 aire, *plaire, to please*.
 are, *avare, miser*.
 aise, *fournaise, furnace*.
 ase, *extâse, extasy*.
 aud, *réchaud, chafing-dish*.
 êpe, *crêpe, crape*.
 erre, *terre, earth*.
 eux, *précieux, precious*.
 euse, *curieuse, curious*.
 ire, *empire, empire*.
 oire, *gloire, glory*.
 oise, *framboise, raspberry*.
 oître, *connoître, to know*.
 ôme, *fantôme, phantom*.
 ône, *trône, throne*.
 oïe, *alose, skad-fish*.

FINALS SHORT.

ac, as *tabac, tobacco*.
 ade *façade, front*.
 aphe, *épitaphe, epitaph*.
 al, *royal, royal*.
 agne *campagne, country*.
 ail, *travail, work*.
 * ait, *attrait, train*.
 an, *cadran, a dial*.
 * art, *part, part*.
 ave *braves, brave*.
 * ec, *sec, dry*.
 ece, *espèce, kind*.
 egle, *regle, rule*.
 egre, *intégrè, upwright*.
 eil, *soleil, sun*.
 * el, *autel, altar*.
 eille, *abeille, bee*.
 epte, *inepte, silly*.
 eu *jeu, game*.
 euf, *neuf, new*.
 * oi *foi, faith*.

FINALS LONG.

ôté, côté, *fide*.
 ouse, épouse, *spouse*.
 âse, rûse, *cunning*.

FINALS SHORT.

ole, monopole, *monopoly*.
 i, fourmi, *ant*.
 tte, patte, *parw*.

Those marked with an asterick are short in the singular, and long in the plural number.

Remarks on the pronunciation of verbs.

We have already said p. 6. that the diphthong *ai* is sounded as an *é* acute, when it is in the first person of a preterite or future of a verb; such as *je parlerai, je donnerai, je donnerai* &c.

We have said also in the same page, that the final *ai*, which is in the imperfect and conditional of all verbs ought to be sounded pretty near as *ès* with a grave accent, such are, *je venois, je viendrois, j'étois je ferois* &c. It remains only to add these two remarks.

1° The final *oient* which is in the third person of the plural in the imperfect and conditional tenses of all verbs, is sounded like *ois* of the first person of the same tense, only a little longer, thus *j'étois* and *ils étoient, je pensois* and *ils pensoient* are pronounced nearly alike.

2° The final *nt* in the third person of the plural in the present and preterite of the indicative and subjunctive moods, is not sounded; thus *je parle* and *ils parlent, je parlusse* and *ils parlaissent*, are pronounced nearly alike.

Remarks on the pronuuciation of Poetry

In poetry and in orations delivered in public, the finals of words are sounded much more strongly than in common conversation; and we may here establish as a general rule, that all the final consonants are sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

The following diphthongs, *ea, ie, io, ian, ion*, are generally sounded with one emission of voice in prose, and with two in poetry: thus for instance *diadème, passion* &c. make two syllables in prose and three in poetry.

In reading poetry we commonly stop a little in the middle of a long verse, and we take breath at the end of every one, though there should be neither stop, nor comma, provided the sense does not suffer by it.

Words which have different sounds and significations.

{ Il bat, <i>he beats.</i>	{ un françois, <i>a french-man</i>
{ un bât, <i>a pack-sadle.</i>	{ françois, <i>francis.</i>
{ Il boite, <i>he limps.</i>	{ jeune, <i>young.</i>
{ une boîte, <i>a box.</i>	{ jeûne, <i>fast.</i>
{ il chasse, <i>he hunts.</i>	{ matin, <i>morning.</i>
{ une chasse, <i>a shrine.</i>	{ matin, <i>mastif.</i>
{ un foret, <i>a gimlet.</i>	{ paroisse, <i>parish.</i>
{ une forêt, <i>a forest.</i>	{ il paroisse, <i>he may appear</i>
{ pêcher, <i>to sin.</i>	{ tache, <i>a spot.</i>
{ pêcher, <i>to fish.</i>	{ tâche, <i>task.</i>
{ un pêcheur, <i>a finner.</i>	{ tacher, <i>to spot.</i>
{ un pêcheur, <i>a fisher-man.</i>	{ tâcher, <i>to endeavour.</i>

CHAPTER II.

OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY is the art of using proper letters and figures in writing the words of a language.

In this Chapter I will speak 1°. of the proper spelling of words, 2°. of the apostrophe, 3°. of the hyphen and cedilla, 4°. of the parenthesis, quotations, diæresis and abbreviations, 5°. of the different sorts of punctuations, and 6°. of the use of capital letters.

Of the proper spelling of the french words.

Orthography is divided into orthography of principles, and orthography of use.

The Orthography of principles consists in the proper spelling 1°. of substantives in the plural number, 2°. of adjectives in the plural and feminine, 3°. of verbs in their different

tenses and persons. These objects are fully explained in the second part of this grammar. The plural of subs. and adj. is found chapter the 2d. section the 4th. The feminine of adj. is described in cha. the 3d. sect. the 1st. and in the conjugation of verbs, you will find the different terminations of their tenses and persons.

The orthography of use cannot be reduced to rules, therefore I will only make some observations which are conform to the practice of good authors.

1° A word simple has usually for final the same consonant which begins the next syllable of the word derived from it; thus *plomb* has for final *b*, *blanc* *c*, *camp* *p* &c. because the second syllable of *plomber* begins by *b*, of *blancheur* by *c*, and of *camper* by *p*.

2° We write usually *am*, *em*, *im*, *om*, *um*, and pronounce *an*, *en*, *in* *on*, *un*, the words in which *m* is followed by *b*, *p* or another *m*, such are *chambre*, *emporter*, *emmener*, &c.

3° We write *dont* with *t* when it is a relative pronoun, and with *c* when it is a conclusive conjunction, as: *les avantages dont nous jouissons viennent de Dieu: nous devons donc lui en rendre des actions de grace.*

4° *Quand* has for final a *d* when it signifies *when*, as *quand viendrez-vous? when will you come?* and a *t* when it signifies *as for*, ex. *quant-à-moi, je le blame: as for me I blame him.*

5° We double the consonants in most of words derived from the *latin*, when they are double in that language; thus *approuver* is spelt with *pp* and *offrir* with *ff*, because they come from the *latin* verbs *approbare*, *offerre* in which these consonants are double.

6° The consonants *l*, *m*, *n*, *t*, are often doubled after *a* and *e*, when the syllable is to be sounded short or open, whether the words derive from the *latin* or not. Thus we write with a double consonant, *salle*, *chandelle*, *femme*, *canne*, *colonne*, *patte*, *assiette* &c.

7° *P* is often double when it comes after *a* or *o*, as *apprendre*, *opprimer* &c.

When the Apostrophe must be used.

The apostrophe is a kind of comma formed thus (') which is put at the top of a letter, to denote the elision of one vowel before another.

A and *e* suffer elision in the monosyllables *le, lu, je, me, se, de, ee, ne, que*, when the word following begins with a vowel or *h* mute: thus we write *l'oiseau, l'amitié, l'homme, j'ai &c.* instead of *le oiseau, la amitié, le homme, je ai.*

They do not suffer elision before *oui, huit, huitieme, onze, onzieme*, nor after a verb in the imperative mood, thus we write, *il n'y a que oui ou non. De onze qu'ils étoient il n'en reste que huit. Dites-le à mon père*, and not, *il n'y a qu'oui ou non. Not d'onze qu'ils étoient il n'en reste qu'huit. Dites l'à mon père.*

I suffers elision in the conjunction *si* before the personal pronouns *il* or *ils*, but not before *elle* nor any substantive whatever, thus we write *s'il vient, if he comes*, with an apostrophe, and *si elle vient, if she comes*, without.

A vowel never suffers elision in a word of more than one syllable, unless it be a conjunction composed of *que*, as *quasi-qu'il d'se, la vertu est aimable*, not *la vert'est aimable*.

Of Hyphens and Cedilla.

The *Hyphen* (in french *le trait-d'union*) is a line across thus (-) which is used,

1° After a verb followed by the pronouns, *je, moi, tu, nous, vous, il, elle, elles, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en, ce, on*, as *pari-je, viens-tu, dis-moi, voyez-les &c.*

2° Between several words so joined, that they make but one, as *avant-coure, arc-en-ciel, cure-dent &c.*

3° Between the particles *ci, là* and the word which precedes them as, *celui-ci, celui-là cet homme-ci, cette femme-là,*

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used ends with a vowel we put a *t* with two *hyphens* between it and the pronoun *il* or *elle* thus, *a-t-il? Parle-t-elle? Has he? Does she speak? Viendra-t-il? Will he come? &c.*

4° The *hyphen* is used at the end of a line, when there is no room to write the whole word. We can divide the syllables of a word, but not the letters of the same syllable; thus for instance we can end a line with *mo* and begin the other with *ment*, if you cannot write the word *moment* in the same line; but you cannot end one with *mom*, end begin the other with *ent*.

The *Cedilla* is a little comma thus, (,) which is put under *ga, go, gu*, when they must be sounded, *sa, so, su*, as *menaga*

leçon conçu. When *ca, co, cu,* have no *cedilla,* they are sounded *ka, ko, ku,* as *cabinet, cochon, cuisine.*

When *c* has the sound of an *s* in the present of the infinitive, it has the same sound in all the tenses and persons of the same verb, and therefore must have a *cedilla,* when it is followed by *a, o, or u.* This observation is worthy of notice.

Of Parenthesis, Quotations, Diæresis and Abbreviations.

1° A *Parenthesis* is made thus () and is used to enclose an occasional sentence, interposed in the middle of the principal one. The use of *parenthesis* must not be too frequent.

2° A *Quotation* is a double comma (,) put at the beginning, at the end, and at every line of the words quoted from an author, exam. *L'avarice est un vice infame, voici ce qu'en dit Bourdaloue: „ l'avarice corrompt tout, elle renverse tout, elle „ domine les hommes, elle en fait des esclaves & les abrutit. ”*

3° The *Diæresis* (in french *le trema*) is two dots thus (¨) put over the vowels *i* or *ü,* when they are not of the same syllable as the vowel preceding; such are *hai, laïque, Saül &c.*

4° The *abbreviations* the most used in french are *Mr.* for *Monsieur.* *Mde.* for *Madame.* *Mlle.* for *Mademoiselle.* *MM.* for *Messieurs.* *S M.* for *Sa Majesté.* *S M Imp.* for *Sa Majesté impériale.* *S M T C.* for *Sa Majesté très Chrétienne.* *S M Cath.* for *Sa Majesté Catholique.* *S M Brit.* for *Sa Majesté Britannique.* *S A R.* for *Son Altesse Royale.* *S A E.* for *Son Altesse Electorale.* *J C.* for *Jesus Christ.* *C P.* for *Constantinople.* *M S.* for *Manuscrit.* *Sept. or 7bre.* for *Septembre.* *Oct. or 8bre.* for *Octobre.* *Nov. or 9bre.* for *Novembre.* *Dec or 10bre.* for *Décembre.*

Of the different sorts of punctuation.

Punctuation is used in writing and printing, to denote the place where the reader should stop to take breath, or to distinguish more easily the different parts of a sentence.

The *Stops* are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are as follows.

(.) une virgule	a comma.
(;) un point & une virgule	a semi-colon.
(:) deux points	a colon.

(.) un point.	a full stop.
(?) un point d'interrogation .	a note of interrogation.
(!) un point d'admiration .	a note of admiration.

These stops are necessary to avoid obscurity, to prevent misconstructions, and for the better understanding of what we read or write. Here follows the use which good authors make of them, and which is grounded upon reason.

A Comma is used 1° in an enumeration, to distinguish the things enumerated as, *les parties du discours sont, le substantif, l'adjectif, le pronom, le verbe, l'adverbe &c.* 2° to distinguish the different parts of a sentence, and to give the reader a proper time for breathing as, *il est bien difficile, quelque philosophie qu'on ait, de souffrir long tems sans se plaindre.*

We do not use a comma between the different parts of a short sentence, which can be sounded at one breath as, *dites-moi si je me suis trompé.*

A Semicolon is used to distinguish the two parts of a sentence of a pretty good length, when the first has a complete sense of itself as; *on est coupable quand on garde son argent, sans vouloir s'en servir au besoin; c'est-là ce qu'on appelle avarice.*

A Colon is used after a sentence which could subsist alone, because it makes a complete sense of itself, but which is however followed by another, which explains, or extends it as; *il ne faut point se moquer des malheureux: car qui peut se flatter de ne l'être jamais.*

N B. A Semicolon or a Colon can and are often indifferently used for each other.

A Full stop is used when the sentence is complete as; *la charité est la première des vertus chrétiennes.*

A Note of interrogation is used at the end of a sentence which expresses a question as; *Mr. votre père est-il à la maison?* is your father at home?

A Note of admiration is put at the end of a sentence which expresses admiration or surprise as; *que vous êtes heureux!* que la vertu a de charmes!

N B. In reading a book, you must stop a little at every comma, a little longer at a semicolon, more at a colon than at a semicolon, and more at a full stop than at a colon.

Of Capital Letters.

Capital or great letters are used,

1° In the beginning of every sentence in prose; they are besides used in the beginning of every verse in poetry. Ex. prose { *La vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.*

poetry { *Vertu is amiable. Vice is odious*
Choisissez des amis de qui la piété,
Vous soit un sûr-garant de leur fidélité.

2° All christian and proper names of persons, kingdoms, provinces, towns, places, rivers, ships, mountains, dignities or professions, and also the names of heathen Gods and Goddesses are written with a capital letter as; *Mars, Venus, Ciceron, Cesar, Londres, la Thamise, les Alpes, la France, l'Angleterre, la Bourgogne &c.*

3° The names of arts and sciences begin with a capital letter, exam. *La Musique & la Peinture sont agréables. Le Grec & le Latin sont deux langues mortes.*

AN ALPHABETICAL SERIES

of the Kingdoms, Republicks, Provinces and principals Towns, which have a deferent denomination in french and in english.

The letter *E* denotes an Empire, *K* a Kingdom, *P* a Province, *T* a Town, & *R* a Republick.

Engl.	Fren.	Engl.	Fren.
Africa.	<i>Afrique.</i>	Bern,	<i>T. Berne.</i>
America,	<i>Amérique.</i>	Bohemia,	<i>K. Bohême.</i>
Antioch,	<i>T. Antioche.</i>	Boulogna,	<i>T. Boulogne.</i>
Antwerp,	<i>T. Anvers.</i>	Brasil,	<i>Brésil.</i>
Apulia,	<i>P. Apouille.</i>	Bremen,	<i>T. Brême.</i>
Athens,	<i>T. Athènes.</i>	Bretanny,	<i>P. Bretagne.</i>
Attica,	<i>P. Attique.</i>	Britania,	<i>K. Bretagne.</i>
Austria,	<i>Autriche.</i>	Brussels,	<i>T. Bruxelles.</i>
Babilon,	<i>K. Babilone.</i>	Burgundy,	<i>P. Bourgogne.</i>
Basil,	<i>T. Bâle.</i>	Cairo,	<i>T. Caire.</i>
Bavaria,	<i>P. Bavière.</i>	Calabria,	<i>P. Calabre.</i>
Canterbury,	<i>T. Cantorbery.</i>	Leiden,	<i>T. Leide.</i>

<i>Engl.</i>	<i>Fren.</i>	<i>Engl.</i>	<i>Fren.</i>
Coppadocia,	P. <i>Cappadoce.</i>	Lisbon,	T. <i>Lisbonne.</i>
Calcedonia,	T. <i>Calcedoine.</i>	Lisle,	T. <i>Lille.</i>
Champain,	P. <i>Champagne.</i>	Liverpool,	T. <i>Liverpole.</i>
Cogn,	T. <i>Cologne.</i>	Lombardy,	P. <i>Lombardie.</i>
Copenhagen,	T. <i>Copenhague.</i>	London,	T. <i>Londres.</i>
Corinth,	T. <i>Corinthe.</i>	Lorrain,	P. <i>Lorraine.</i>
Cornwal,	P. <i>Cornouaille.</i>	Lucca,	R. <i>Luques.</i>
Corfica,	<i>Corse.</i>	Lyons,	T. <i>Lyon.</i>
Corunna,	T. <i>Corogne.</i>	Mantua,	T. <i>Mantoue.</i>
Cracow,	P. <i>Cracovie.</i>	Mecca,	T. <i>Méque.</i>
Cyprus,	<i>Cypre.</i>	Mechlin,	T. <i>Malines.</i>
Damascus,	T. <i>Damas.</i>	Mentz,	T. <i>Mayence.</i>
Dauphiny,	P. <i>Dauphiné.</i>	Mexico,	<i>Mexique.</i>
Denmark,	K. <i>Danemark.</i>	Miletus,	T. <i>Milet.</i>
Dover,	T. <i>Douvres.</i>	Minorca,	<i>Minorque.</i>
Dunkirk,	T. <i>Dunkerque.</i>	Mogul,	E. <i>Mogol.</i>
Edinburg,	T. <i>Edimbourg.</i>	Morocco,	E. <i>Maroc.</i>
Egypt,	<i>Egypte.</i>	Moscovy,	E. <i>Moscouie.</i>
England,	K. <i>Angleterre.</i>	Nantz,	T. <i>Nantes.</i>
Ephesus,	T. <i>Ephése.</i>	Nice,	T. <i>Nicée.</i>
Epidaurus,	T. <i>Epidaure.</i>	Nimeguen,	T. <i>Nimégué.</i>
Epirus,	P. <i>Epire.</i>	Niniveth,	T. <i>Ninive.</i>
Flanders,	P. <i>Flandres.</i>	Normandy,	P. <i>Normandie.</i>
Frank-fort,	T. <i>Francfort.</i>	Norway,	<i>Norwege.</i>
Geneva,	R. <i>Généve.</i>	Odenburg,	T. <i>Odenbourg.</i>
Genoa,	R. <i>Gênes.</i>	Ostend,	T. <i>Ostende.</i>
Germany,	E. <i>Allemagne.</i>	Otranto,	T. <i>Otrante.</i>
Ghent,	T. <i>Gand.</i>	Padoua,	T. <i>Padoue.</i>
Greece,	<i>Grèce.</i>	Palermo,	T. <i>Palerme.</i>
Guerderland,	P. <i>Guldres.</i>	Persia,	K. <i>Perse.</i>
Hague,	T. <i>la Haie.</i>	Pharfalia,	T. <i>Pharfale.</i>
Hanover,	P. <i>hanovre.</i>	Picardy,	P. <i>Picardie.</i>
Holland,	R. <i>Holande.</i>	Poland,	K. <i>Pologne.</i>
Hungary,	K. <i>Hongrie.</i>	Prussia,	K. <i>Prusse.</i>
Japan,	E. <i>Japon.</i>	Ratisbon,	T. <i>Ratisbonne.</i>
Ireland,	K. <i>Irlande.</i>	Saguntum,	T. <i>Sagonte.</i>
Italy,	<i>Italie.</i>	Sardinia,	K. <i>Sardaigne.</i>
Lacedemon,	T. <i>Lacédémone.</i>	Sardis,	T. <i>Sardes.</i>
Lancaster,	<i>Lancastre.</i>	Savoy,	<i>Savoie.</i>
Leghorn,	T. <i>Livourne.</i>	Saxony,	<i>Saxe.</i>

20 FRENCH NAMES OF KINGDOMS, TOWNS &c.

Scotland,	<i>Ecoffe,</i>	Triers,	T. <i>Tré-ves.</i>
Sicily.	K. <i>Sicile.</i>	Troy,	T. <i>Troie.</i>
Sluys,	T. <i>P'Ecluse.</i>	Turky,	E. <i>Turquie.</i>
Spain,	K. <i>P'Espagne.</i>	Tuscany,	<i>Toscane.</i>
Sparta,	T. <i>Sparte.</i>	Valencia,	T. <i>Valence.</i>
Suabia,	<i>Suabe.</i>	Venice,	R. <i>Vénise.</i>
Sweden,	K. <i>Suede.</i>	Vincenza,	P. <i>Vicence.</i>
Tarſus,	T. <i>Tarſe.</i>	Wales,	P. <i>Galles.</i>
Thebaid,	P. <i>Thébaïde.</i>	Warſow,	T. <i>Varſovie.</i>
Theſſaly,	Pr <i>Theſſalie.</i>	York,	T. <i>Yorch.</i>
Toledo,	T. <i>Tolede.</i>		

OBSERVATIONS.

1°. All other names of kingdoms, provinces, and towns ending in *a* in english, become french changing *a* in *e* mute ;
 engl. { Asia, Arabia, Cefarea, Arcadia, Carolina, &c.
 fren. { *Aſie, Arabie, Céſarée, Arcadie, Caroline, &c.*

2°. The other names of towns ending in *burg* become french by changing *burg* into *bourg* ; thus,
 engl. { Aufburg, Friburg, Hamburg, Brandeburg, &c.
 fren. { *Aufbourg, Fribourg, Hambourg, Brandebourg, &c.*

3°. Most of the others names not mentioned before, are the ſame in both languages.

A METHOD

to learn what is the french denomination of the proper names of Heathen Gods, and of persons taken from the Greek or Latin: and in what they differ from the english.

1°. The proper names of men ending in english in *a*, are the ſame in both languages, thus we ſay,
 Engl. { Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula &c.
 Fren. { *Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula, &c.*

2°. The proper names of women and goddeſſes ending in *a*, become french by changing the final *a* into *e* mute, example
 Engk. { Julia, Cleopatra, Octavia, Agrippina, Diana &c.
 Fren. { *Julie, Cléopatre, Octavie, Agrippine, Diane, &c.*

- 3°. The proper names ending in english in *as*, become french by changing *as* into *e* mute, example.
 Engl. { *Mecenas, Eneas, Pythagoras* &c.
 Fren. { *Mecène, Enée, Pythagore* &c.
- 4°. The proper names ending in english in *es*, become french changing that final into *e* mute, example
 Engl. { *Demosthenes, Uliſſes, Socrates*, &c.
 Fren. { *Demosthène, Uliſſe, Socrate* &c.
- 5°. The proper names ending in *o* in english, become french by changing *o* into *on*, example
 Engl. { *Dido, Cicero, Cato, Plato, Scipio* &c.
 Fren. { *Didon, Ciceron, Caton, Platon, Scipion* &c.
- 6°. The proper names ending in english in *us* or *ius* are the same in french when they are of two syllables only, ex.
 Engl. { *Brutus, Cyrus, Cræſus, Venus* &c.
 Fren. { *Brutus, Cyrus, Cræſus, Vénus* &c.
- 7°. Most of proper names ending in *us* or *ius*, become french by changing that final into *e* mute, when they are composed of three or more syllables, ex.
 Engl. { *Orpheus, Lucretius, Esculapius* &c.
 Fren. { *Orphée, Lucrèce, Esculape* &c.
- 8°. Most of proper names ending in english in *is* or *al*, are the same in both languages, ex.
 Engl. { *Sesoſtris, Juvenal, Annibal, Afrubal* &c.
 Fren. { *Séſoſtris, Juvenal, Annibal, Afrubal* &c.
- 9°. Most of proper names ending in english in *ander*, become french by changing *ander* into *andre* as,
 Engl. { *Alexander, Leander, Lifander* &c.
 Fren. { *Alexandre, Léandre, Lifandre* &c.

An easy method to learn several thousand french words.

RULE I.

Most of nouns substantive and adjective which end in english with any of the seven following syllables *ble, ce, de, ge, ne, ion, and ent* are the same in french as in english; Thus we say in both languages.

- 1°. *ble* Fable, visible, incapable, noble, sensible, &c.
- 2°. *ce* Province, distance, vice, evidence, force, &c.
- 3°. *de* ambuscade, servitude, habitude, prélude, &c.
- 4°. *ge* charge, page, passage, piège, siège, febrifuge.

32 METHOD TO LEARN MANY 1000 FRENCH WORDS.

- 5°. *ne* machine, scène, famine, doctrine, &c.
 6°. *ion* nation, opinion, union, éducation, religion &c.
 7°. *ent* prudent, diligent, patient, content, &c.

RULE II.

Most of english words ending in any of the seven following syllables, *ary, ory, cy, ty, ous, our, and er*, become french by changing the final, thus

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----|-----------|----------------------|
| 1°. <i>ary</i> | into <i>aire</i> | as | military | <i>militaire</i> &c. |
| 2°. <i>ory</i> | <i>oire</i> | as | glory | <i>gloire</i> &c. |
| 3°. <i>cy</i> | <i>ce</i> | as | clemency | <i>clémence</i> &c. |
| 4°. <i>ty</i> | <i>te</i> | as | humanity | <i>humanité</i> &c. |
| 5°. <i>ous</i> | <i>eux</i> | as | dangerous | <i>dangereux</i> &c. |
| 6°. <i>our</i> | <i>eur</i> | as | favour | <i>fauteur</i> &c. |
| 7°. <i>or</i> | <i>eur</i> | as | doctor | <i>docteur</i> &c. |

RULE III.

Most of english verbs ending in *ise, use, ute*, become french by adding an *r* to the final, thus

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1°. <i>ise</i> | add. <i>r</i> | as | baptise, realise, | <i>baptiser, réaliser</i> &c. |
| 2°. <i>use</i> | <i>r</i> | as | abuse, excuse, | <i>abuser, excuser</i> &c. |
| 3°. <i>ute</i> | <i>r</i> | as | dispute, refute, | <i>disputer, réfuter</i> &c. |

RULE IV.

Most of english verbs ending in *ate, fy, or ish* become french by changing the final as follows.

- | | English | French |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1°. <i>ate</i> | in <i>er</i> as accelerate, abrogate, | <i>accélérer, abroger</i> &c. |
| 2°. <i>fy</i> | <i>fier</i> as justify, liquefy, | <i>justifier, liquéfier</i> &c. |
| 3°. <i>ish</i> | <i>ir</i> as abolish, accomplish, | <i>abolir, accomplir</i> &c. |

Note 1. Most nouns which end in *y*, not preceded by *c, r, or t*, of which before rule 2 become french changing this final into *ie*, and have the plural alike in both languages, thus.

	Singular	Plural
Engl. {	folly, tragedy, fury,	follies, tragedies, furies.
Fren. {	<i>folie, tragédie, furie,</i>	<i>folies, tragédies, furies.</i>

METHOD TO LEARN MANY 1000 FRENCH WORDS. 23

Note 2. These three, *attribute*, *contribute*, *distribute* are excepted from rule the third, and make in french *attribuer*, *contribuer*, *distribuer*.

Note 3. There are some exceptions to these four rules particularly to the words ending in *ty*; but they are very few, and you certainly will derive a great advantage from them, if you learn these finals by heart.



PART II.

OF THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in french as in other languages, nine parts of speech, called *article, substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection*; of which I will treat separately in the following chapters: the five first are declinable, and the four others indeclinable.

CHAPTER I.

Of the french articles.

The article is a little word, placed before a substantive, to specify the extent of the signification in which it is taken.

There are three sorts of articles in french which are called:

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1°. definite as | <i>le m. la f. and les pl.</i> | <i>the</i> |
| 2°. indefinite | <i>un m. une f. it has no plural.</i> | <i>a or an</i> |
| 3°. partitive | <i>du m. de la f. and des pl.</i> | <i>some or any</i> |

Their use and concord are fully explained in the syntax.

CHAPTER II.

Of substantives.

This chapter is divided into four sections; *the first* explains the nature and the different species of substantives; *the second* speaks of their cases and declension; *the third* treats of their gender, and shews how to distinguish the masculine from the feminine; *the fourth* has for object the plural of nouns, and directs how to form it, from the singular number.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the nature and species of substantives.

A *substantive* is a word which expresses the name of a person, or a thing such as, *homme* man, *femme* woman, *cheval* horse, *maison* house &c.

There are three sorts of substantives, called *proper*, *common* or *collective*.

The *substantive proper* expresses some individual person, or thing, which cannot be divided into species, such are, *Pierre* Peter, *Londres* London, *Caton* Cato, *Paris* Paris &c.

The *substantive common* can be said of all the objects of the same kind, such are *royaume* kingdom, *riviere* river, *soldat* soldier, *homme* man &c.

The *substantive collective* is a word singular, which presents to the mind several persons or things. The nouns collective are *general* or *partitive*.

A *noun collective general* represents the whole object such are, *la nation* the nation, *l'armée* the army, *la flotte* the fleet &c.

A *noun collective partitive* represents only a part of the whole object such are, *un grand nombre* a great number, *une foule* a croud, *la plupart* the most part &c.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the declension of Nouns.

As the french nouns do not change their termination in the same number, many grammarians pretend, that there is no cases in our tongue; and that we express by some prepositions, & particularly with *de* and *à*, what the Greeks and Latins express by the different terminations of their nouns; but for me, I think it is more simple & natural, to give the same names to the same relations of things; so much the more that many of those who learn french, learn at the same time latin or greek. Therefore I admit of six cases called, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*. However as the *genitive* and *ablative* are invariably expressed the same way in french, and as there can never be any mistake about the *vocative*; for brevity-sake,

we will decline our nouns with the four first cases only. *N* denotes the nominative, *G* the genitive, *D* the dative, and *Ac* the accusative.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1°. a Noun Masculine.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. ac.	le roi, <i>the king</i>	les rois, <i>the kings</i>
G.	du roi, <i>of or from</i>	des rois, <i>of or from</i>
D.	au roi, <i>to the king</i>	aux rois, <i>to the kings</i>

2°. a Noun Feminine.

N. ac.	la reine, <i>the queen</i>	les reines, <i>the queens</i>
G.	de la reine, <i>of or from</i>	des reines, <i>of or from</i>
D.	à la reine, <i>to the queen</i>	aux reines, <i>to the queens</i>

3°. a Noun beginning with a vowel.

N. ac.	l'amî, <i>the friend</i>	les amis, <i>the friends</i>
G.	de l'amî, <i>of or from the</i>	des amis, <i>of or from</i>
D.	à l'amî, <i>to the friend</i>	aux amis, <i>to the friends</i>

4°. a Noun beginning with an h mute.

N. ac.	l'homme, <i>the man</i>	les hommes, <i>the men</i>
G.	de l'homme, <i>of or from the</i>	des hommes, <i>of &c.</i>
D.	à l'homme, <i>to the man</i>	aux hommes, <i>to the men</i>

DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE
N. ac,	un jardin, <i>a garden</i>	une maison, <i>a house</i>
G.	d'un jardin, <i>of or from</i>	d'une maison, <i>of &c.</i>
D.	à un jardin, <i>to a garden</i>	à une maison, <i>to a house</i>

DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR M.	PLURAL M.
N. ac.	du pain, <i>some bread</i>	des poissons, <i>fishes</i>
D.	à du pain, <i>to some bread</i>	à des poissons, <i>to fishes</i>
	SINGULAR F.	PLURAL F.
N. ac.	de la viande, <i>some meat</i>	des oranges, <i>oranges</i>
D.	à de la viande, <i>to some meat</i>	à des oranges, <i>to oranges</i>

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

N. ac. Londres,	London.	Paris	Paris.
G. de Londres,	of or from.	de Paris,	of or from.
D. à Londres,	to London.	à Paris,	to Paris.
N. ac. Pierre,	Peter.	Caton,	Cato.
G. de Pierre,	of or from.	de Caton,	of or from.
D. à Pierre,	to Peter.	à Caton,	to Cato.

Observe that all the nouns which begin with a vowel or *b* mute, take *P* in the nominative and accusative, *de P* in the genitive, and *à P* in the dative, whether they be masculine or feminine.

SECTION THE THIRD.

How to distinguish when a Noun is masculine or feminine.

A GENERAL RULE.

The nouns which have reference to males, are of the masculine gender, and those which have reference to females, are feminine. Thus *un homme* a man, *un cheval* a horse are M. and *une femme* a woman, *une jument* a mare &c. are F. The gender of other nouns is known by their termination.

N. B. The fishes, reptils and insects both males and females are known in french by one gender only, which is generally distinguished by their final as the inanimate objects of which hereafter, many birds and wild beasts are also of one gender only.

MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

RULE THE FIRST.

Of Nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, *ion* and *son* when *s* is preceded by a vowel, the following only are masculine.

1° *X*, as *le choix* choice, *un crucifix* a crucifix, *le flux* the flux, *le reflux* the reflux, *le prix* price, *le Styx* the Styx.

2° *EUR*, as *le bonheur* the happiness, *le malheur* the misfortune, *le cœur* the heart, *l'honneur* honour, *le deshonneur* dishonour, *le labeur* labour, *l'équateur* the equator, *l'intérieur* the inward part, *l'extérieur* the out side.

3° *ION* as, *un bastion* a bastion, *un champion* a champion, *le croupion* the rump, *un lampion* a little lamp, *un million* a million, *le septentrion* the north, *un scorpion* a scorpion.

4° *SON* preceded by a vowel as, *du poison* poison, *le blason* heraldry, *un gazon* a green turf, *l'horison* the horison, *un oison* a young goose, *un peson* a steel yard, *un tison* a fire-brand.

RULE THE SECOND.

Nouns which end in a consonant are of the masculine gender, when they have any other final than *x*, *eur*, *ion* & *son* of which before.

This rule which comprehends many thousands words, has no other exceptions than the 27 following.

<i>la boisson</i> ,	drinking,	<i>une leçon</i> ,	a lesson,
<i>une brebis</i> ,	a sheep,	<i>la main</i> ,	the hand,
<i>de la chair</i> ,	flesh,	<i>la mer</i> ,	the sea,
<i>une chanson</i> ,	a song,	<i>la mort</i> ,	death,
<i>une clef</i> ,	a key,	<i>la nef</i> ,	{ the body of the
<i>la cour</i> ,	the court,		church,
<i>une cuiller</i> ,	a spoon,	<i>la nuit</i> ,	the night,
<i>une dent</i> ,	a tooth,	<i>la part</i> ,	the part,
<i>une dot</i> ,	a portion,	<i>la rançon</i> ,	the ransom,
<i>la façon</i> ,	the making,	<i>la moisson</i> ,	the harvest,
<i>la faim</i> ,	hunger,	<i>la soif</i> ,	thirst,
<i>la fin</i> ,	the end,	<i>une souris</i> ,	a mouse,
<i>une fois</i> ,	once,	<i>une tour</i> ,	a tower,
<i>une forêt</i> ,	a forest,	<i>une vis</i> ,	a screw,

RULE THE THIRD.

All trees, and also all adjectives substantively used, are masculine, whatever is their termination; such are for trees, *un houx* an holy-oak, *un chêne* an oak, *un hêtre* a beech, &c. and for adjectives, *un impie*, *un joueur*, *un chanteur*, *un danseur*,

RULE THE FOURTH.

Nouns which end in *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, are masculine, and also those which end in *é* accented and not preceded by *a*; as, *un opéra* an opera, *un oubli* an oblivion, *un chapeau* a hat, *le thé* the tea, &c.

These three, *la foi* faith, *la fourmi* the ant, *la loi* the law, are excepted from the final *i*.

These six, *de l'eau* water, *de la glu* bird-lime, *la peau* the skin, *la merci* the mercy, *une tribu* a tribe, *la vertu* virtue, are excepted from the final *u*. Other finals have no exceptions.

RULE THE FIFTH.

Nouns ending in any of the following terminations, *age*, *ège*, *uge*, *aire*, *oire*, *acle*, *aume*, *ême*, *isme*, *iste* and *ôme*, are masculine; as, *un paysage* a landscape, *un piège* a snare, *le déluge* flood, *le vulgaire* vulgar, *un oratoire* an oratory, *un obstacle* an obstacle, *un royaume* a kingdom, *un diadème* a diadem, *un sophisme* a sophism, *un atôme* an atom.

La gloire glory, *la mâchoire* the jaw, *la mémoire* memory, *la nageoire* the fin, *une passoire* a colander, *la victoire* victory, are excepted from the final *oire*.

The word *de la crème* cream, is excepted from *ême*; the other finals have no exceptions.

FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

1° All nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, *ion*, & *son*, when *s* is preceded by a vowel, are feminine, except the words mentioned in rule the first of the masculine terminations.

2° All nouns which end in *te*, *tié*, *ée*, *ie*, *ne*, *uce*, *ade*, *ude*, *ance*, *anse*, *ence*, *ense*, *ière*, *ure*, *lle*, *imie*, *nne*, *ffe*, *tte*, are feminine, except the words mentioned in the following series.

3° All nouns which end in *e* mute are feminine, except those mentioned in rule the fifth, and in the following list.

N. B. With preceding rules, if properly attended to, you may invariably distinguish when a noun is masculine or feminine.

AN ALPHABETICAL SERIES

of all Nouns Masculine not comprehended in the Masculine terminations.

A		A	
Abyfine,	<i>Abysf.</i>	aigle,	<i>eagle.</i>
acte,	<i>act.</i>	albâtre,	<i>alabaster.</i>
adverbe,	<i>an adverb.</i>	alcove,	<i>alcove.</i>
adultère,	<i>adultery.</i>	ambre,	<i>amber.</i>

anathême, *anathema.*
 ange, *angel.*
 angle, *angle.*
 antidote, *antidote.*
 antre, *a cave.*
 apôseme, *aposem.*
 apostille, *a note.*
 arbitre, *umpire.*
 arbre, *treg.*
 arbutte, *shrub.*
 artifice, *artifice.*
 asthme, *asthma.*
 astre, *star.*
 asile, *sanctuary.*
 athée, *an atheist.*
 augure, *omen.*
 auspice, *auspice.*
 axe, *axis.*

B

Bénéfice, *a living.*
 beurre, *butter.*
 blâme, *blame.*
 bitume, *bitumen.*
 branle, *motion.*
 bronze, *cast copper.*
 buste, *bust.*

C

Câble, *Cable.*
 cadavre, *a corpse.*
 cadre, *frame.*
 calibre, *size.*
 calice, *chalice.*
 calme, *calm.*
 camphre, *camphire.*
 cantique, *spiritual song.*
 caprice, *whim.*
 caractère, *character.*
 carosse, *a coach.*
 casque, *a helmet.*
 catalogue, *a list.*
 cauterre, *a cautory.*
 centre, *center.*

cercle, *a circle.*
 chanvre, *bemp.*
 chapitre, *a chapter.*
 chiffre, *a cypher.*
 cidre, *cyder.*
 cierge, *wax-taper.*
 cigne, *a swan.*
 cilice, *hair-cloth.*
 cylindre, *cylinder.*
 cimeterre, *cymeter.*
 cimetière, *church-yard.*
 clistère, *a glister.*
 cloître, *cloister.*
 code, *code.*
 codicile, *codicil.*
 coffre, *a trunk.*
 colloque, *a conference.*
 colosse, *a colossus.*
 comité, *comity.*
 commerce, *trade.*
 concile, *council.*
 concombre, *cucumber.*
 cône, *a cone.*
 congre, *a conger.*
 compte, *an account.*
 conte, *tale.*
 comté, *a county.*
 contraste, *contrast.*
 côté, *side.*
 coude, *elbow.*
 couvercle, *lid.*
 crépuscule, *twilight.*
 crêpe, *a crape.*
 crible, *sieve.*
 crime, *crime.*
 cube, *cube.*
 cuivre, *copper.*
 culte, *worship.*

D

Décompte, *Discounting.*
 dédale, *maze.*
 degré, *step.*

délire, *delirium.*

démérite, *demerit.*

défaître, *disaster.*

désordre, *disorder.*

diable, *devil.*

dialogue, *dialogue.*

diamètre, *diameter.*

dimanche, *sunday.*

dilemme, *dilemma.*

diocèse, *diocese.*

divorce, *divorce.*

dogme, *dogma.*

domaine, *domain.*

domicile, *abode.*

doute, *doubt.*

E

Ebène, *Ebony.*

échange, *exchange.*

édifice, *edifice.*

éloge, *praise.*

émétique, *emetick.*

empire, *empire.*

emplâtre, *plaster.*

épisode, *an episode.*

équilibre, *equilibrium.*

équinoxe, *equinox.*

escandre, *a bustle.*

escompte, *discount.*

espace, *space.*

évangile, *gospel.*

exercice, *exercise.*

exode, *exodus.*

extrême, *an extrem.*

F

Faîte, *top.*

faîte, *ostentation.*

fiacre, *hackney-coach.*

flegme, *phlegm.*

fleuve, *river.*

foible, *blind-side.*

foie, *the liver.*

frontispice, *frontispice.*

G

Génévièvre, *juniper.*

génie, *genius.*

genre, *gender.*

germe, *bud.*

geste, *gesture.*

glaive, *a sword.*

globe, *a globe.*

globule, *globule.*

golphe, *a gulph.*

gouffre, *whirlpool.*

grade, *a degree.*

H

Havre, *Haven.*

homicide, *a murder.*

hôte, *land-lord.*

I

Jeûne, *fast.*

incendie, *a conflagration.*

insecte, *insect.*

interrègne, *interreign.*

intervalle, *interval.*

isthme, *isthmus.*

L

Labyrinthe, *Labyrinth.*

légume, *pulse.*

libelle, *libel.*

liège, *cork.*

lierre, *ivy.*

lièvre, *bare.*

linge, *linen.*

l'ouïe, *hearing.*

lucre, *profit.*

lustre, *lustre.*

luxe, *luxury.*

M

Mâle, *Male.*

maléfice, *witch-craft.*

manifeste, *manifesto.*

marbre, *marble.*

martyre, *martyrdom.*

masque, *a mask.*

massacre, *a slaughter.*
 mausolée, *mausoleum.*
 membre, *member.*
 mélange, *mixture.*
 mensonge, *a lie.*
 mérite, *merit.*
 merle, *a black-bird.*
 météore, *meteor.*
 meuble, *furniture.*
 mercure, *mercury.*
 meurtre, *murder.*
 ministère, *ministry.*
 mobile, *motion.*
 modèle, *model.*
 monarque, *monarch.*
 monde, *the world.*
 monastère, *monastery.*
 monopole, *monopoly.*
 monstre, *monster.*
 murmure, *murmur.*
 mystère, *mystery.*

N

Navire, *ship.*
 négoce, *trade.*
 nombre, *number.*

O

Ongle, *nail.*
 opprobre, *reproach.*
 ordre, *order.*
 ombre, *shadow.*
 organe, *an organ.*
 orge, *barley.*

P

Pacte, *a pact.*
 paradoxe, *paradox.*
 Parnasse, *Parnassus.*
 parricide, *parricide.*
 parterre, *a flower-garden.*
 participe, *participle.*
 parjure, *perjury.*
 Parapluie, *umbrella.*
 patrimoine, *patrimony.*

peigne, *a comb.*
 pêne, *a bolt.*
 peuple, *people.*
 phénomène, *phenomenon.*
 plâtre, *plaster.*
 poème, *a poem.*
 poêle, *a stove.*
 poivre, *pepper.*
 pôle, *the pole.*
 pore, *pore.*
 portique, *portico.*
 pouce, *thumb.*
 précepte, *precept.*
 précipice, *precipice.*
 préjudice, *prejudice.*
 prélude, *prelude.*
 prestige, *a prestige.*
 prétexte, *a pretence.*
 principe, *a principle.*
 problème, *a problem.*
 prodige, *prodigy.*
 proverbe, *proverb.*
 pupitre, *a desk.*
 quâdre, *a frame.*

R

Régime, *a diet.*
 regne, *reign.*
 remède, *remedy.*
 reptile, *a reptile.*
 reproche, *reproach.*
 reste, *rest.*
 rêve, *a dream.*
 rhume, *a rheum.*
 risque, *a risk.*

S

Sable, *Sand.*
 sabre, *broad-sword.*
 sacrifice, *sacrifice.*
 sacerdoce, *priest-hood.*
 salpêtre, *salt-peter.*
 scandale, *scandal.*
 sceptre, *a scepter.*

schisme,	<i>a schism.</i>	théâtre,	<i>theatre.</i>
scrupule,	<i>a scruple.</i>	tôme,	<i>a volume.</i>
ségle,	<i>rye.</i>	tonnerre,	<i>the thunder.</i>
service,	<i>service.</i>	traité,	<i>treaty.</i>
sexe,	<i>a sex.</i>	triangle,	<i>triangle.</i>
siècle,	<i>an age.</i>	trône,	<i>a throne.</i>
signe,	<i>a sign.</i>	trophée,	<i>trophy.</i>
silence,	<i>silence.</i>	tropique,	<i>tropic.</i>
songe,	<i>dream.</i>	trouble,	<i>trouble.</i>
souffle,	<i>breath.</i>	tube,	<i>tube.</i>
soufre,	<i>sulfur.</i>	tumulte,	<i>tumult.</i>
spectre,	<i>a ghost.</i>	V	
style,	<i>a style.</i>	Vacarme,	<i>uproar.</i>
subside,	<i>subsidy.</i>	vase,	<i>vessel.</i>
sucré,	<i>sugar.</i>	ventre,	<i>belly.</i>
supplice,	<i>a torment.</i>	verbe,	<i>verb.</i>
symbole,	<i>symbol.</i>	verre,	<i>glass.</i>
symptôme,	<i>symptom.</i>	vestibule,	<i>entry.</i>
synode,	<i>synode.</i>	vice,	<i>vice.</i>
synonyme,	<i>synonymal.</i>	vinaigre,	<i>vinegar.</i>
système,	<i>system.</i>	volume,	<i>volume.</i>
T		ulcère,	<i>ulcer.</i>
Télescope,	<i>Telescope.</i>	Z	
termée,	<i>a term.</i>	Zèle,	<i>Zeal.</i>
texte,	<i>a text.</i>	zéphire,	<i>zephyrus.</i>

N. B. There are some more, but they are so little used, that I have not thought proper to insert them.

SUBSTANTIVES

masculine in one signification and feminine in an other.

{ Un coche,	<i>A travelling coach.</i>
{ une coche,	<i>a sow.</i>
{ un enseigne,	<i>an enseign.</i>
{ une enseigne,	<i>a sign.</i>
{ un exemple,	<i>a patern.</i>
{ une exemple,	<i>a copy.</i>
{ un foret,	<i>a piercer.</i>
{ une forêt,	<i>a forest.</i>
{ un garde,	<i>a keeper.</i>
{ une garde,	<i>a guard.</i>

E

34 Substantive masc. in one signification and fem. in an other.

le greffe,	registry.
la greffe,	the graft.
un guide,	a guide.
une guide,	a guidance.
un livre,	a book.
une livre,	a pound.
un mémoire,	a memorandum.
une mémoire,	a memory.
un mode,	a modality.
une mode,	a fashion.
un moule,	a mould.
une moule,	a muscle.
un mousse,	a ship-boy.
la mousse,	the moss.
un page,	a page at a king.
une page,	a side of a leaf.
un parallèle,	a comparison.
une parallèle,	a parallel-line.
un pique,	a spade.
une pique,	a pike.
un poêle,	a stove.
une poêle,	a frying-pan.
un poste,	an employment.
une poste,	a post office.
le pourpre,	a sort of illness.
la pourpre,	the purple.
un sommeil,	a sleep.
une somme,	a sum.
un souris,	a smile.
une souris,	a mouse.
le temple,	the church.
la temple,	the temple of the head.
un tour,	a trick.
une tour,	a tower.
un triomphe,	a triumph.
la triomphe,	a trum at cards.
un trompette,	a trumpeter.
une trompette,	a trumpet.
un vase,	a vase.
la vase,	the mud.
un voile,	a veil.
une voile,	a sail.

{ gens M. before a substantive.

{ gens F. after an adjective.

{ personne M. when pronoun.

{ personne F. when substantive.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of the number of substantives.

The number is the property which the nouns have, to denote one or several objects.

There are two numbers called singular and plural. A noun is in the singular, when it denotes, but one person or thing, as *un homme* a man, *une maison* a house; a noun is in the plural, when it denotes several persons or things as, *des hommes*, men, *des maisons* houses.

RULES TO FORM THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

Rule the first.

Nouns which end in *e* or *i* in the singular, become plural by the addition of an *s*: as *un homme*, *un ami*, a man, a friend, singular. *Des hommes*, *des amis* plural; men, friends.

Rule the second.

Nouns which end in *u* in the singular, take also an *s* for the plural, when *u* is preceded by a consonant, as *la vertu*, *la tribu* singular, *les vertus*, *les tribus* plural. But they take an *x*, when *u* is preceded by another vowel as, *le lieu*, *le chapeau* singular, *les lieux*, *les chapeaux* plural.

Rule the third.

Nouns which end in *s*, *x*, or *z* in the singular, have both numbers alike, as *le fils*, *la voix*, *le nez* singular; *les fils*, *les voix*, *les nez* plural.

Rule the fourth.

Most of the nouns which end in *al* or *aïl* in the singular, become plural by changing *al* or *aïl* into *aux* as, *cheval*, *travail* singular; *chevaux*, *travaux* plural.

Rule the fifth.

Nouns which end in *nt* in the singular, become plural by the addition of an *s*, if the word is of one syllable only, as *pont*, *dent* singular; *ponts*, *dents* plural; and most commonly by changing *t* in *s*, if the word is of several syllables as, *enfant*, *prudent* singular, *enfants*, *prudens* plural.

Rule the sixth.

Nouns which in the singular end in any other consonants, than those before mentioned in the three last rules, become plural by the addition of an *s*; as *maison*, *cour*, *jardin* singular, *maisons*, *cours*, *jardins* plural.

The words *aieul*, *ciel*, *aïl*, *tout*, are excepted and make in the plural, *ayeux*, *cieux*, *yeux*, *tous*.

HOW THE COMPOUND WORDS FORM THEIR PLURAL.

1°. When a word is composed of a substantive and a pronoun, both take the mark of a plural as, *monseigneur*, *madame* singular; *messieurs*, *mesdames* plural.

2°. When a word is composed of two substantives not separated by a preposition, both take also the mark of the plural, as *un Garde-Suisse*, *un arc-boutant* singular; *des Gardes-Suisses*, *des arcs-boutants* plural.

3°. When a word is composed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural, as *un arc-en-ciel*, *un chef-d'œuvre* singular; *des arcs-en-ciel*, *des chefs-d'œuvre* plural.

4°. When a word is composed of a substantive and a verb or a preposition, the substantive alone takes the mark of the

plural as, *un garde-manger, un avant-coureur* singular; *des gardes-manger, des avant-coueurs* plural.

SUBSTANTIVES WHICH HAVE NO PLURAL IN FRENCH.

The nouns which have no plural are 1°. the names of metals taken in general, as *l'or* gold, *l'argent* silver, *le cuivre* copper, *le plomb* lead, *le fer* iron &c. we sometimes say *les fers, les plombs* &c. but then we consider these metals, as wrought and not in general.

2°. The name of habitual virtues and vices such as *la foi* faith, *l'espérance* hope, *la charité* charity, *la prudence* prudence, *l'orgueil* pride, *l'avarice* covetousness, &c.

3°. The infinitives substantively used, as *le boire* the drinking, *le manger* the eating, &c. not *les boires, les mangers*.

4°. The following substantives.

<i>l'absinthe,</i>	<i>worm-wood.</i>	<i>le miel,</i>	<i>honey.</i>
<i>l'artillerie,</i>	<i>artillery.</i>	<i>la mollesse,</i>	<i>effeminacy.</i>
<i>l'attirail,</i>	<i>train.</i>	<i>la noblesse,</i>	<i>nobility.</i>
<i>le bonheur,</i>	<i>happiness.</i>	<i>l'odorat,</i>	<i>smelling.</i>
<i>le courroux,</i>	<i>wrath,</i>	<i>l'ouïe,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
<i>la disette,</i>	<i>scarcity.</i>	<i>la pauvreté,</i>	<i>poverty.</i>
<i>l'enfance,</i>	<i>infancy.</i>	<i>le pourpre,</i>	<i>red-fever.</i>
<i>l'estime,</i>	<i>esteem.</i>	<i>le prochain,</i>	<i>our neighbour.</i>
<i>la faim,</i>	<i>hunger.</i>	<i>la renommée,</i>	<i>fame.</i>
<i>le fiel,</i>	<i>gall.</i>	<i>le repos,</i>	<i>rest.</i>
<i>la fumée,</i>	<i>smoke.</i>	<i>la réputation,</i>	<i>reputation.</i>
<i>la gloire,</i>	<i>glory.</i>	<i>le salut,</i>	<i>salvation.</i>
<i>le goût,</i>	<i>taste.</i>	<i>le sang,</i>	<i>blood.</i>
<i>l'encens,</i>	<i>incense.</i>	<i>la soif,</i>	<i>thirst.</i>
<i>l'eucharistie,</i>	<i>eucharist.</i>	<i>le sommeil,</i>	<i>sleep.</i>
<i>la jeunesse,</i>	<i>youth.</i>	<i>la vieillesse,</i>	<i>old age.</i>
<i>le lait,</i>	<i>milk.</i>	<i>la virilité,</i>	<i>man-hood.</i>

SUBSTANTIVES

which have no singular in french.

les accordailles,	<i>epousals.</i>	les entraves,	<i>shackles.</i>
les alpes,	<i>alps.</i>	les entrailles,	<i>bowels.</i>
les annales,	<i>annals.</i>	les épousailles,	<i>epousals.</i>
les ancêtres,	<i>ancestors.</i>	les frais,	<i>expenses.</i>
les armoiries,	<i>coat of arms.</i>	les funérailles,	<i>funerals.</i>
les arrérages,	<i>arrears.</i>	les gens,	<i>people.</i>
les atours,	<i>elegant-dress.</i>	les matériaux,	<i>materials.</i>
les brossailles,	<i>briars.</i>	les mœurs,	<i>manners.</i>
les calendes,	<i>calendes.</i>	les mouchettes,	<i>snuffers.</i>
les catacombes,	<i>catacombs.</i>	les munitions,	<i>ammunitions.</i>
les ciseaux,	<i>scissors.</i>	les obseques,	<i>obsequies.</i>
les confins,	<i>confines.</i>	les pleurs,	<i>tears.</i>
les confitures,	<i>sweet-meats.</i>	les proches,	<i>relations.</i>
les décombres,	<i>rubbish.</i>	les prémices,	<i>first-fruits.</i>
les délices,	<i>delight.</i>	les pyrénees,	<i>pyrenees.</i>
les dépens,	<i>cost.</i>	les repréfailles,	<i>reprisals.</i>
les écrouelles,	<i>the king's evil.</i>	les vivres,	<i>vituals.</i>

CHAPTER THE THIRD.

OF ADJECTIVES.

THE *substantive* as we said before, page 25 expresses the name of a person or thing; the *adjective* on the contrary expresses the qualities of a person or thing as; *la vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.* Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious. *Vertu* and *vice* are two substantives. *Odieux* and *aimable* two adjectives.

A noun which makes a good sense with the words person or thing, is an adjective; a noun which cannot make any sense with them, is a substantive; this is an easy rule, by which they may be invariably distinguished from one another: thus for instance, the word *good* is an adjective, because

we may say a good person a good thing; but the word *man* is a substantive; because we cannot say, a *man* person, a *man* thing.

SECTION THE FIRST.

HOW TO FORM THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

AS adjectives agree in french with the substantives to which they are joined or relative, they have also two genders and numbers. The feminine gender is formed from the masculine according to the following rules.

Rule the first.

Adjectives which end in *e* mute in the masculine singular are alike in both genders, as *sage, brave, célèbre* masc. *Sage, brave, célèbre* fem.

Rule the second.

Adjectives which in masculine gender end in any of the following vowels *é* accented *i*, *o* or *u*, become feminine by the addition of an *e* mute as, *aimé, poli, connu* masc. *Aimée, polie, connue* fem.

The adjectives *beau, mou, fou, nouveau*, are written *bel, mol, fol, nouvel*, before a substantive masculine which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, and make in feminine, *belle, molle, folle, nouvelle*.

Rule the third.

Adjectives which end in *f* in the masculine, become feminine by changing *f* into *ve* as; *vis, actif, neuf* masc. *Vive, active, neuve* fem.

Rule the fourth.

The adjectives of the eleven following terminations *el, eil, ul, an, ien, on, as, ais, os, et, ot*; double their final consonants and take an *e* mute for final in feminine gender as;

cruel, pareil, nul, païsan, ancien, bon, gras, épais, gros, net, sec masc. *Cruelle, pareille, nulle, païsanne, ancienne, bonne, grosse, nette, sotte*, fem.

Rule the fifth.

Adjectives which end in *x* in the masculine, become feminine by changing *x* into *se* as; *jaloux, heureux* masc. *Jalouse, heureuse* fem.

These four *doux, faux, vieux, roux*, make in the fem. *douce, fausse, vieille, rousse*.

Rule the sixth.

Of the seven adjectives which end in *c* these three, *blanc, franc, sec*, make in the feminine *blanche, franche, sèche*; the four others *caduc, grec, public, ture*, make in the fem. *caduque, grecque, publique, turque*.

Rule the seventh.

Adjectives ending in *eur*, become feminine by changing *eur* into *eure*, when they are not derived from verbs, as *intérieur, extérieur* masc. *intérieure, extérieure* fem. and by changing *eur* into *euse*, when they are verbal adjectives as, *danseur, chanteur* masc. *dansuse, chanteuse* fem. from *danser, chanter*.

These three *pêcheur, enchanteur, vengeur* make in the fem. *pêchereuse, enchantresse, vengeresse*.

Rule the eighth.

Adjectives which end in *teur* in french and in *tor* in english; for the most part, become feminine, by changing *teur* into *trice* as, *acteur, instituteur* masc.; *actrice, institutrice* fem.

Rule the ninth.

Adjectives of all finals not mentioned before, become feminine by adding an *e* to the masculine termination as, *grand, divin, savant* masc.; *grande, divine, savante* fem.

These six, *absous, dissous, frais, nud, long, verd*: are excepted, and make in the feminine *absoute, dissoute, fraîche, nue, longue, verte*.

N. B. You may observe from the preceding rules, that all adjectives end in *e* mute in the feminine singular; and as those which end in *e* mute, form their plural by the addition of an *s*, all adjectives end in *es* in the feminine plural.

SECTION THE SECOND.

OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

The adjectives form their plural as the substantives of which we have spoken before, and the rules I have given in section the fourth chapter the second, can be applied to adjectives, without any exception.

The following adjectives have no plural in the masculine gender.

austral,	southern,	littéral,	litteral,
conjugal,	conjugal,	matinal,	early,
diamétral,	diametral,	naval,	naval,
fatal,	fatal,	nuptial,	nuptial,
filial,	filial,	pastoral,	pastoral,
final,	final,	pascal,	pascal,
frugal,	frugal,	spécial,	special,
jovial,	jovial,	total,	total,
libéral,	liberal,	trivial,	trivial,
lustral,	lustral,	vénal,	venal,

SECTION THE THIRD.

Of Comparatives and Superlatives.

A *Comparative* is nothing else than a comparison of two or more objects, in order to know what proportion they bear to one another: now as two objects can be equal, superior

or inferior to one another, there are three sorts of comparatives called of *equality*, *superiority*, and *inferiority*.

The *Comparative of equality* is formed by prefixing the words *si* or *aussi* to an adjective as: je suis *aussi* riche que vous. *I am as rich as you.*

The *Comparative of superiority* is formed by prefixing the word *plus* to an adjective as: je suis *plus* grand que vous. *I am taller than you.*

The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by prefixing the word *moins* to an adjective as: je suis *moins* heureux que vous. *I am not so happy as you are.*

The *Superlatives* increase or diminish in the highest degree the signification of adjectives. They are of two sorts; the one *relative* and the other *absolute*.

The first is formed by prefixing the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with *plus* to the adjective as: j'ai vu *la plus* belle femme d'Angleterre. *I have seen the handsomest woman in England.*

The second is formed by prefixing the adverbs *très* or *fort* to the adjective as: je suis *très* malheureux. *I am very unfortunate.*

Comparatives and Superlatives formed irregularly.

These three adjectives *bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, deviate from others in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives which are as follows.

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
adj.	bon, good.	meilleur, better.	le meilleur, the best.
	mauvais, bad.	pire, worse.	le pire, the worst.
	petit, little.	moindre, less.	le moindre, the least.
adv.	bien, well.	mieux, better.	le mieux, the best.
	mal, bad.	pis, worse.	le pis, the worst.
	peu, little.	moins, less.	le moins, the least.

We say also *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*, *le plus petit*, but never *le plus bon* for a comparison.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of Cardinal numbers.

The *cardinal* numbers denote the quantity of persons or things, and answer to the question *how much, how many*. They are called *cardinal*, because they are the root of all others. They are as follows

1,	un. <i>m.</i> une. <i>f.</i>	one.	I.
2,	deux.	two.	II.
3,	trois.	three.	III.
4,	quatre.	four.	IV.
5,	cinq.	five.	V.
6,	fix. <i>pr.</i> six.	six.	VI.
7,	sept. <i>pr.</i> set.	seven.	VII.
8,	huit.	eight.	VIII.
9,	neuf.	nine.	IX.
10,	dix. <i>pr.</i> dis.	ten.	X.
11,	onze.	eleven.	XI.
12,	douze.	twelve.	XII.
13,	treize.	thirteen.	XIII.
14,	quatorze.	fourteen.	XIV.
15,	quinze.	fifteen.	XV.
16,	seize.	sixteen.	XVI.
17,	dix-sept.	seventeen.	XVII.
18,	dix-huit.	eighteen.	XVIII.
19,	dix-neuf.	nineteen.	XIX.
20,	vingt.	twenty.	XX.
21,	vingt-un.	one & twenty.	XXI.
22,	vingt-deux.	two & twenty.	XXII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
30,	trente.	thirty.	XXX.
31,	trente-un.	one & thirty.	XXXI.
32,	trente-deux.	two & thirty.	XXXII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
40,	quarante.	forty.	XL.
41,	quarante-un.	one & forty.	XLI.
42,	quarante-deux.	two & forty.	XLII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
50,	cinquante.	fifty.	L.

51,	cinquante-un.	one & fifty.	LI.
52,	cinquante deux.	two & fifty.	LII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
60,	soixante.	sixty.	LX.
61,	soixante-un.	one & sixty.	LXI.
62,	soixante-deux.	two & sixty.	LXII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
70,	soixante-dix.	seventy.	LXX.
71,	soixante-onze.	one & seventy.	LXXI.
72,	soixante-douze.	two & seventy.	LXXII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
80,	quatre-vingts.	eighty.	LXXX.
81,	quatre-vingt un.	one & eighty.	LXXXI.
82,	quatre-vingt deux.	two and eighty.	LXXXII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
90,	quatre-vingt dix.	ninety.	XC.
91,	quatre-vingt onze.	one & ninety.	XCI.
92,	quatre-vingt douze.	two & ninety.	XCII.
	jusqu'à	and so on to	
100,	cent.	one hundred.	C.
200,	deux cents.	two hundred.	CC.
300,	trois cents.	three hundred.	CCC.
400,	quatre cents.	four hundred.	CCCG.
500,	cinq cents.	five hundred.	D.
600,	six cents.	six hundred.	DC.
700,	sept cents.	seven hundred.	DCC.
800,	huit cents.	eight hundred.	DCCG.
900,	neuf cents.	nine hundred.	DCCCG.
1000,	mille.	one thousand.	M.

Observations upon Cardinal Numbers.

1° When two or more numbers are joined together, the greatest goes the first in french. Thus we say, *vingt-cinq*, *vingt-six* &c. and not *cinq & vingt* five and twenty, *six & vingt*, six and twenty, as the English often do.

2° When several numbers meet together, we do not put in french any conjunction between them, thus we say *cent vingt*, *cent trente*, and not *cent & vingt*, *cent & trente*, hundred and twenty, hundred and thirty.

3° The english word *thousand* is rendered in french by *mil* with an *l* only, when it is used for the date of the year,

and by *mille* with *lle*, in others circumstances; thus we say, *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt seize, les françois remportèrent une victoire en Italie & firent dix mille hommes prisonniers.*

4° When the words *cent* and *mille* are followed by a number, they are never preceded by the word *un* in french, as they are in english by the word *one*; thus we say; *cent cinquante*, for one hundred and fifty, *mil sept cent*, for one thousand and seven hundred, and not *un-cent cinquante*, nor *un-mil sept cent*.

5° These numbers *vingt* and *cent* are written with an *s*, only when they are preceded, by a number and followed immediately by a substantive: thus we write, *quatre-vingts livres*, eighty pounds, *trois cents soldats*, three hundred soldiers with an *s*, and *quatre-vingt-dix livres*, ninety pounds *trois cent vingt six soldats*, three hundred and twenty six soldiers without an *s*.

6° The word *million* takes always an *s* when it is preceded by another number as, *deux millions*, *dix millions*.

7° All numbers not mentioned in the preceding observations are always indeclinable.

SECTION THE FIFTH.

Of Ordinal numbers.

Ordinal numbers denote the order and disposition of things; they are as follows,

1 ^{er} ,	premier. <i>m</i> , première. <i>f</i> ,	1 st .	first.
2 ^e ,	second. <i>m</i> , seconde. <i>f</i> ,	2 ^d .	second.
3 ^e ,	troisième.	3 ^d ,	third.
4 ^e ,	quatrième.	4 th ,	fourth.
5 ^e ,	cinquième.	5 th ,	fifth.
6 ^e ,	sixième.	6 th ,	sixth.
7 ^e ,	septième.	7 th ,	seventh.
8 ^e ,	huitième.	8 th ,	eighth.
9 ^e ,	neuvième.	9 th ,	ninth.
10 ^e ,	dixième.	10 th ,	tenth.
11 ^e ,	onzième.	11 th ,	eleventh.
12 ^e ,	douzième.	12 th ,	twelfth.
13 ^e ,	treizième.	13 th ,	thirteenth.

14e,	quatorzième.	14th,	fourteenth.
15e,	quinzième.	15th,	fifteenth.
16e,	seizième.	16th,	sixteenth.
17e,	dix-septième.	17th,	seventeenth.
18e,	dix-huitième.	18th,	eighteenth.
19e,	dix-neuvième.	19th,	nineteenth.
20e,	vingtième.	20th,	twentieth.
21e,	vingt unième. &c.	21th,	twenty first.

Observations upon Ordinal Numbers.

1° Except *le premier* and *le second*, the ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal, by changing *e* mute into *ième* for those which end with a vowel as, *quatre*, *quatrième*, and by adding *ième* to those which end in any other consonant than *f* as, *trois*, *dix* &c. cardinal; *troisième*, *dixième* ordinal.

2° Those which end in *f*, change that final into *-ve* as, *neuf*, *dix-neuf* cardinal; *neuvième*, *dix-neuvième* ordinal.

3° The english use always the ordinal numbers, when they put a date to any thing; the french, on the contrary, use most commonly the cardinal in this case (except the two first which are ordinal); thus we say, *le premier de Janvier*, *le second de Février*, *le trois de Mars*, *le quatre d'Avril*, *le cinq de May* &c. *the first of January*, *the second of February*, *the third of March*, *the fourth of April*, *the fifth of May* &c.

4° The adverbs of number are formed from the ordinal, by adding *ment* to the final as: *quatrième*, *dixième*, ordinal; *quatrièmement*, *dixièmement*, adverbs.

There are again two others sorts of numbers called *collective* and *distributive*: the *collective* denotes a certain quantity of things joined together as, *une douzaine*, a dozen, *une cinquantaine*, fifty. The *distributive* expresses a part of the whole as; *la moitié*, the half, *le tiers*, the third part, *le dixième* the tenth part &c.

CHAPTER THE FOURTH.

Of pronouns.

Pronouns are words used instead of nouns. They are of six sorts called *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, *interrogative* and *indeterminate*, of which as follows.

Of Personal pronouns.

The personal pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she* &c. represent some persons or personified objects. As the same pronoun is expressed one way in french, when it is *conjunctive*, (that is joined to a verb) and another when *disjunctive*: a serious attention must be given to the following declensions in which they are carefully distinguished, *

DECLENSION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Je,	<i>I.</i>	N.	Nous	<i>We.</i>
D.	Me,	<i>To me.</i>	D.	Nous	<i>To us.</i>
Ac.	Me,	<i>Me.</i>	Ac.	Nous	<i>Us.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

N.	Tu,	<i>Thou.</i>	N.	Vous	<i>You.</i>
D.	Te,	<i>To Thee.</i>	D.	Vous	<i>To you.</i>
Ac.	Te,	<i>Thee.</i>	Ac.	Vous	<i>You.</i>

* Under the word *conjunctive* are the personal pronouns which govern, or are governed by a verb, and under the word *disjunctive* are the personal pronouns to be used in all others circumstances.

THIRD PERSON MASC.

N.	Il,	<i>He.</i>	N.	Ils,	<i>They.</i>
D.	Lui,	<i>To him.</i>	D.	Leur,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Le.	<i>Him.</i>	Ac.	Les,	<i>Them.</i>

THIRD PERSON FEM.

N.	Elle,	<i>She.</i>	N.	Elles,	<i>They.</i>
D.	Lui,	<i>To her.</i>	D.	Leur,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	La,	<i>Her.</i>	Ac.	Les,	<i>Them.</i>

DECLENSION OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

N.	Moi,	<i>I.</i>	N.	Nous,	<i>We.</i>
G.	De moi,	<i>Of me.</i>	G.	De nous,	<i>Of us.</i>
D.	A moi,	<i>To me.</i>	D.	A nous,	<i>To us.</i>
Ac.	Moi,	<i>Me.</i>	Ac.	Nous,	<i>Us.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

N.	Toi,	<i>Thou.</i>	N.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>
G.	De Toi,	<i>Of thee.</i>	G.	De vous,	<i>Of You.</i>
D.	A toi,	<i>To thee.</i>	D.	A vous,	<i>To you.</i>
Ac.	Toi,	<i>Thee.</i>	Ac.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>

THIRD PERSON MASC.

N.	Lui,	<i>He.</i>	N.	Eux,	<i>They.</i>
G.	De lui,	<i>Of him.</i>	G.	D'eux,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	A lui,	<i>To him.</i>	D.	A eux,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Lui,	<i>Him.</i>	Ac.	Eux,	<i>Them.</i>

THIRD PERSON FEM.

N.	Elle,	<i>She.</i>	N.	Elles,	<i>They.</i>
G.	D'elle,	<i>Of her.</i>	G.	D'elles,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	A elle,	<i>To her.</i>	D.	A elles,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Elle,	<i>Her.</i>	Ac.	Elles,	<i>Them.</i>

DECLENSION OF IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. Il, elle, or ce, <i>it.</i>	Ils, elles, or ce, <i>they.</i>
G. En, <i>of it.</i>	En, <i>of them.</i>
D. Lui, y, <i>to it.</i>	Leur, y, <i>to them.</i>
Ac. Le, la, <i>it.</i>	Les, <i>them.</i>

N. B. The compound personal pronouns *Moi-même* Myself, *Toi-même* Thyself, *Lui-même* Himself, *Elle-même* Herself, *Nous-mêmes* Ourselves, *Vous-mêmes* Yourselves, *Eux-mêmes* Themselves, take in french the preposition *de* in the genitive case and *à* in the dative.

2^o Of Possessive Pronouns.

The Possessive pronouns denote the possession. They are called *conjunctive possessive*, when they are joined to a noun, and *disjunctive possessive*, when not. They are declined as follows.

DECLENSION OF CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>
N. Ac. mon, ma,	mes. <i>my.</i>
G. de mon, de ma,	de mes. <i>of my.</i>
D. à mon, à ma,	à mes. <i>to my.</i>
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>
N. Ac. ton, ta,	tes. <i>thy.</i>
G. de ton, de ta,	de tes. <i>of thy.</i>
D. à ton, à ta,	à tes, <i>to thy.</i>
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>
N. Ac. son, sa,	ses. <i>his, her, its.</i>
G. de son, de sa,	de ses. <i>of his, of her, of its.</i>
D. à son, à sa,	à ses. <i>to his, to her, of its.</i>

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	
N. Ac.	notre,	nos.	<i>our.</i>
G.	de notre,	de nos.	<i>of our.</i>
D.	à notre,	à nos.	<i>to our.</i>

	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	
N. Ac.	votre,	vos.	<i>your.</i>
G.	de votre,	de vos.	<i>of your.</i>
D.	à votre,	à vos.	<i>to your.</i>

	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	
N. Ac.	leur,	leurs.	<i>their.</i>
G.	de leur,	de leurs.	<i>of their.</i>
D.	à leur,	à leurs.	<i>to their.</i>

DECLENSION OF DISJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes.	<i>mine.</i>
G.	du mien,	de la mienne,	des miens,	des miennes.	<i>of mine.</i>
D.	au mien,	à la mienne,	aux miens,	aux miennes.	<i>to mine.</i>

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes.	<i>thine.</i>
G.	du tien,	de la tienne,	des tiens,	des tiennes.	<i>of thine.</i>
D.	au tien,	à la tienne,	aux tiens,	aux tiennes.	<i>to thine.</i>

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	le sien,	la sienne,	les siens,	les siennes.	<i>his, her, its.</i>
G.	du sien,	de la sienne,	des siens,	des siennes.	<i>of his, &c.</i>
D.	au sien,	à la sienne,	aux siens,	aux siennes.	<i>to his. &c.</i>

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	
N. ac.	le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres.	<i>ours.</i>
G.	du nôtre,	de la nôtre,	des nôtres.	<i>of ours.</i>
D.	au nôtre,	à la nôtre,	aux nôtres.	<i>to ours.</i>

Singular.		Plural.
	<i>m.</i> <i>f.</i>	<i>m & f.</i>
N. ac.	le vôtre, la vôtre,	les vôtres, yours.
G.	du vôtre, de la vôtre,	des vôtres, of yours.
D.	au vôtre, à la vôtre,	aux vôtres, to yours.
	<i>m.</i> <i>f.</i>	<i>m & f.</i>
N. ac.	le leur, la leur,	les leurs, theirs.
G.	du leur, de la leur,	des leurs, of theirs.
D.	au leur, à la leur,	aux leurs, to theirs.

Observations upon these Pronouns.

1°. These pronouns agree in french in gender and number, with the substantive they precede, or to which they have a reference.

2°. The possessive conjunctive take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative. The disjunctive are preceded by *le, la, les*, in the nominative, by *du, de lu, des*, in the genitive, and by *au, à la, or aux*, in the dative.

3°. *Leur* conjunctive personal pronoun *to them*, must not be confounded with *leur* possessive pronoun *their*. The first never takes an *s*, and the second takes one in the plural, as *dites leur que leurs freres sont arrivés*. Tell them that their brothers are arrived.

4°. *Notre & votre* conjunctive possessive are sounded short; *le nôtre, le vôtre* possessive disjunctive are sounded long, and have a circumflex accent over *ô*; as *notre pere est mort, le vôtre est en bonne santé*. Our father is dead, your is in good health.

3°. *Of Demonstrative Pronouns.*

Demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and point as it were, to the eye the noun which they precede, or to which they have a reference. They are called *conjunctive demonstrative*, when they are joined to a substantive, and *disjunctive* when not.

DECLENSION OF CONJUNCTIVE

demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	ce,	cet,	cette, <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> .
G.	de ce,	de cet,	de cette, <i>of this</i> or <i>of that</i>
D.	à ce,	à cet,	à cette, <i>to this</i> or <i>to that</i> .

Plural.

N. ac.	ces,	<i>these</i> or <i>those</i> .
G.	de ces,	<i>of these</i> or <i>of those</i> .
D.	à ces,	<i>to these</i> or <i>to those</i> .

DECLENSION OF DISJUNCTIVE

demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	celui-ci,	celle-ci,	<i>this</i> .
G.	de celui-ci,	de celle-ci,	<i>of this</i> .
D.	à celui-ci,	à celle-ci,	<i>to this</i> .

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	ceux-ci,	celles-ci,	<i>these</i> .
G.	de ceux-ci,	de celles-ci,	<i>of these</i> .
D.	à ceux-ci,	à celles-ci,	<i>to these</i> .

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	celui-là,	celle-là,	<i>that</i> .
G.	de celui-là,	de celle-là,	<i>of that</i> .
D.	à celui-là,	à celle-là,	<i>to that</i> .

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	ceux-là,	celles-là,	<i>those</i> .
G.	de ceux-là,	de celles-là,	<i>of those</i> .
D.	à ceux-là,	à celles-là,	<i>to those</i> .

N. ac.	ceci,	<i>this</i> .	cela,	<i>that</i> .
G.	de ceci,	<i>of this</i> .	de cela,	<i>of that</i> .
D.	à ceci,	<i>to this</i> .	à cela,	<i>to that</i> .

4°. Of relative Pronouns.

Though all pronouns have a reference to a substantive and might be, on that account, called *relative*; however the following, *qui, que, dont, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, bear particularly that denomination, being more particularly related to their antecedent, than any other. Of the relative pronouns, some have a reference only to persons or personified objects, and some to animals and things. They are declined as follows.

Pronoun, relative to persons.

N.	qui,	who.
G.	de qui, or dont,	of whom.
D.	à qui,	to whom.
Ac.	qui, or que	whom.

Pr. relative to animals and things.

Singular.

	m.	f.	
N.	qui, or lequel,	laquelle	which.
G.	du quel, de laquelle, dont,		of which.
D.	au quel, à laquelle,		to which.
Ac.	que, or lequel,	laquelle,	which.

Plural.

	m.	f.	
N.	qui, or lesquels, lesquelles,		which.
G.	des quels, des quelles, dont,		of which.
D.	aux quels, aux quelles,		to which.
Ac.	que, or lesquels, lesquelles,		which.

5°. Of interrogative pronouns.

Interrogative pronouns are those used to ask a question; they are these three, *who, which, and what*, expressed and declined in french as follows.

1°. *Who?*

N.	qui?	<i>who?</i>
G.	de qui?	<i>of whom?</i>
D.	à qui?	<i>to whom?</i>
Ac.	qui?	<i>whom?</i>

2°. *Which?*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	lequel,	laquelle,	lesquels,	lesquelles,	<i>which?</i>
G.	duquel,	de laquelle,	desquels,	desquelles,	<i>of which?</i>
D.	auquel,	à laquelle,	auxquels,	auxquelles,	<i>to which?</i>

3°. *What before a Substantive?*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. ac.	quel,	quelle,	quels,	quelles,	<i>what?</i>
G.	de quel,	de quelle,	de quels,	de quelles,	<i>of what?</i>
D.	à quel,	à quelle,	à quels,	à quelles,	<i>to what?</i>

What without Substantive.

N. ac.	quoi,	<i>what?</i>
G.	de quoi,	<i>of what?</i>
D.	à quoi,	<i>to what?</i>

6°. *Of Indeterminate Pronouns,*

Indeterminate pronouns are so-called, because they express a vague and indeterminate object; they are the sixteen following.

1 on,	<i>oneself.</i>	7 tout,	<i>every thing.</i>
2 le même,	<i>the same.</i>	8 toutce qui,	<i>all that.</i>
3 plusieurs,	<i>many or several.</i>	9 quiconque,	<i>whoever.</i>
4 autres,	<i>others.</i>	10 l'un l'autre,	<i>one another.</i>
5 quelqu'un,	<i>somebody.</i>	11 l'un & l'autre,	<i>both.</i>
6 chacun,	<i>every body.</i>	12 l'un ou l'autre,	<i>either.</i>

13 ni l'un ni l'autre, *neither*. 15 personne, *nobody*.

14 aucun, pas un, *not one*. 16 rien, *nothing*.

Observe 1. *on* makes *de* *soy* in the genitive case, *à* *soy* in the dative, and *soi* in the accusative.

2° *L'un l'autre* makes *l'un de l'autre* in the genitive, and *l'un à l'autre* in the dative.

3. All others pronouns take the preposition *de* in the genitive, and *à* in the dative case.

CHAPTER THE FIFTH.

OF VERBS.

This chapter is divided into *eight* sections. *The first* speaks of the nature and species of verbs; *the second* treats of their different moods, tenses, numbers and persons; *the third* gives the conjugations of the auxiliaries *avoir* & *être*, and contains a list of those conjugated with *to have* in english and with *être* in french. *The fourth* comprehends the ten regular conjugations. *The fifth* explains how to conjugate the reflected verbs. *The sixth* gives a method to conjugate all verbs with negations, interrogations and pronouns. *The seventh* has for object, the irregular conjugations, and *the eighth* treats of the impersonal.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the nature and species of verbs.

A verb according to the latin etymology *verbum* signifies *word*, to denote that the verb is the word by excellence, and the principal part of speech.

A verb expresses an action done or received, or denotes only the state of its nominative case; hence arise particularly three sorts of verbs, which are called.

verbs	1°. active	<i>actif.</i>
	2°. passive	<i>passif.</i>
	3°. neuter	<i>neutre.</i>

The *active verb* expresses the action of its nominative, upon some persons or things; as *Dieu punira les méchans*. God will punish the wicked. *Punish* is a verb active, which expresses the action of God over the wicked.

The *passive verb* expresses an action received by its nominative case, as *les méchans seront punis de Dieu*. Wicked people will be punished by God.

The *neuter verb* expresses merely the state of its nominative case; as *je suis*, I am, *je dors*, I sleep, *je languis*, I languish &c. it expresses also an action, but which remains in the subject which produces it, as *je marche*, I walk, *j'agis*, I act, &c.

Verbs are again subdivided into six classes, which are called.

verbs

{	1°. auxiliary	<i>auxiliaires.</i>
	2°. reflected	<i>réflexis.</i>
{	3°. personal	<i>personels.</i>
	4°. impersonal	<i>impersonels.</i>
{	5°. regular	<i>réguliers.</i>
	6°. irregular	<i>irréguliers.</i>

1°. The *auxiliary verbs* are these two *avoir* & *être* to have and to be, they are called *auxiliaries*, because they help to conjugate all other verbs in their compound tenses.

2°. The *reflected verbs* are those which have for subject and object the same person or thing as, *je me lève* I rise, *je m'habille* I dress myself, *je me repens* I repent &c.

3°. The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons in the singular number, and three in the plural, in all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods; as *je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*, *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*.

4°. The *impersonal verbs* are those which are used only in the third person singular of each tense; as *il pleut*, it rains, *il neige*, it snows, *il gèle*, it freezes, &c.

5°. The *regular verbs* are those which are conjugated in all their tenses and persons, as the verb, of the same kind in the infinitive, which is given for example, in regular conjugations; thus for instance *chanter* & *danser* to sing and to dance, are regular of the first conjugation, because they are conjugated like *parler* in all their tenses and persons.

6° The irregular verbs are those which deviate in some tenses or persons, from the verb regular of the same conjugation which is given for example; thus *aller* is irregular, because it is not conjugated on *parler*, though it has the same final in the infinitive mood.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of Moods, Tenses, Numbers & Persons Of Verbs.

Verbs are necessarily subject, 1° to moods, whereby they express in what manner a thing comes to pass; 2° to tenses, by the help of which they represent the thing spoken of as present, past or future; 3° to numbers & persons, that they may agree with their nominative case. It is this assemblage which we call to conjugate; or rather the conjugation is nothing else than the art of varying the different moods, tenses, numbers and persons of a verb.

1° OF MOODS. Moods are the different manners of using a verb. There are four moods which are, the infinitive, the indicative, the subjunctive & imperative.

The infinitive mood which is the root of a verb, and by which the conjugations are distinguished from each other, expresses an action, but in an undeterminate manner, without specifying any particular agent as, *parler* to speak, *dormir* to sleep, *agir* to act, &c.

The indicative mood shews in a direct and positive manner the different tenses of a verb, it forms a sense of itself independently of what precedes or follows, as, *je veux* I am willing, *j'écris* I am writing, *je parle* I speak.

The subjunctive mood denotes also different tenses, but dependently of the verb or conjunction antecedent, as, *il faut que nous soyons modestes*, *quelque mérite que nous ayons*: if you take out *il faut que*, the rest, *nous soyons modestes*, has not a complete sense.

The imperative mood expresses the action of desiring, commanding, exhorting, &c. as, *répondez moi* answer me.

{ *tenez votre parole inviolablement*
{ *mais ne la donnez pas inconsidérément.*

2° OF TENSES. Tenses are different terminations, which shew if what is expressed by a verb, has a reference to a present, past, or future time. The denomination of tenses is in the following declensions, and their use is fully explained in the syntax, chapters the 15th. 16th. & 17th.

3° OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS. There are two numbers in a verb, which are, the *singular & plural*; the singular is used when we speak of one, as, *vosre frere est mort*, your brother is dead; and the plural, when we speak of more than one, as, *vos freres sont morts*, your brothers are dead.

There are three persons in each number, the *first* is used when we speak of ourselves, the *second* when we speak to another, and the *third* when we speak of another.

SECTION THE THIRD.

Conjugation of the auxiliary avoir to have.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	avoir,	to have.
<i>Gerund,</i>	ayant,	having.
<i>Participle,</i>	eu,	had.
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	avoir eu,	to have had.
<i>Compound of the gerund,</i>	ayant eu,	having had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. J'ai, * <i>I have,</i>	Nous avons, <i>we have.</i>
2. tu as, <i>thou hast,</i>	vous avez, <i>you have.</i>
3. il a, <i>he has,</i>	ils ont, <i>they have.</i>

* The figure 1, 2, 3, denote the three persons.

IMPERFECT.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. J'avois, <i>I had,</i> | Nous avions, <i>we had,</i> |
| 2. tu avois, <i>thou hadst,</i> | vous aviez, <i>you had,</i> |
| 3. il avoit, <i>he had,</i> | ils avoient <i>they had.</i> |

PRÆTERITE.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. J'eus, <i>I had,</i> | Nous eûmes, <i>we had,</i> |
| 2. tu eus, <i>thou hadst,</i> | vous eûtes <i>you had,</i> |
| 3. il eut, <i>he had,</i> | ils eurent, <i>they had.</i> |

FUTURE.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. J'aurai, <i>I shall or will</i> | } <i>have.</i> | Nous aurons <i>we shall</i> | } <i>have.</i> |
| 2. tu auras, <i>thou shalt</i> | | vous aurez, <i>you shall</i> | |
| 3. il aura; <i>he shall</i> | | ils auront, <i>they shall</i> | |

CONDITIONAL.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. J'aurois, <i>I would</i> | } <i>have.</i> | Nous aurions, <i>we would</i> | } <i>have.</i> |
| 2. tu aurois, <i>would'st</i> | | vous auriez <i>you would</i> | |
| 3. il auroit, <i>he would</i> | | ils auroient <i>they would</i> | |

Compound of the present,	J'ai eu &c.	<i>I have had</i>
Compound of the imperfect	J'avois eu &c.	<i>I had had.</i>
Compound of the præterite	J'eus eu &c.	<i>I had had.</i>
Compound of the future	J'aurai eu &c.	<i>I shall have had.</i>
Compound of the conditional	J'aurois eu &c.	<i>I would have had.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. J'aie, <i>I may have,</i> | Nous ayons, <i>we may have,</i> |
| 2. tu aies, <i>thou may'st have,</i> | vous ayez, <i>you may have,</i> |
| 3. il ait, <i>he may have,</i> | ils aient. <i>they may have.</i> |

PRÆTERITE TENSE.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. J'eusse, <i>I might have,</i> | Nous eussions, <i>we might have,</i> |
| 2. tu eusses, <i>thou mightest</i> | vous eussiez, <i>you might have,</i> |
| 3. il eût, <i>he might have,</i> | ils eussent, <i>they might have.</i> |

Compound of the present,	J'aie eu,	<i>I may have had</i>
Compound of the præterite,	J'eusse eu,	<i>I might have had.</i>

****** Many authors now a day write, j'avais, tu avais, il avait, &c. and use *ai* instead of *oi* for the three persons singular of the imperfect and conditional of all verbs, I do not follow that orthography, because it is not adopted by the french academy.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>No first person,</i>	<i>Ayons,</i>	<i>let us have,</i>
<i>aies, have thou,</i>	<i>ayez,</i>	<i>have ye,</i>
<i>qu'il ait, let him have,</i>	<i>qu'ils aient,</i>	<i>let them have</i>

N. B. *Though I have only put the first person of the compound tenses, however the pupil must repeat all persons by heart.*

Conjugation of the verb auxiliary être to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present Tense,</i>	<i>être,</i>	<i>to be.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	<i>étant,</i>	<i>being.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>été,</i>	<i>been.</i>
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	<i>avoir été,</i>	<i>to have been.</i>
<i>Compound of the Gerund,</i>	<i>ayant été,</i>	<i>having been.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1 Je suis, <i>I am,</i>	Nous sommes, <i>we are.</i>
2 tu es, <i>thou art,</i>	vous êtes, <i>you are.</i>
3 il est, <i>he is,</i>	ils sont, <i>they are.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
1 J'étois, <i>I was,</i>	Nous étions, <i>we were.</i>
2 tu étois, <i>thou wast,</i>	vous étiez, <i>you were.</i>
3 il étoit, <i>he was,</i>	ils étoient, <i>they were.</i>
PRETERITE.	
1 Je fus, <i>I was,</i>	Nous fûmes, <i>we were.</i>
2 tu fus, <i>thou wast,</i>	vous fûtes, <i>you were.</i>
3 il fut, <i>he was,</i>	ils furent, <i>they were.</i>
FUTURE.	
1 Je serai, <i>I shall or will be,</i>	Nous serons, <i>we shall or will be.</i>
2 tu seras, <i>thou shalt or wilt be,</i>	vous serez, <i>you shall or will be.</i>
3 il sera, <i>he shall or will be,</i>	ils seront, <i>they shall or will be.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je ferois, <i>I would be,</i>	Nous serions <i>we would be.</i>
tu ferois, <i>thou wouldst be,</i>	vous seriez, <i>you would be.</i>
il feroit, <i>he would be,</i>	ils feroient, <i>they would be.</i>
Compound of the present, J'ai été, <i>I have been.</i>	
Compound of the imperfect, J'avois été, <i>I had been.</i>	
Compound of the preterite, J'eus été, <i>I had been.</i>	
Compound of the future, J'aurai été <i>I shall have been.</i>	
Compound of the conditional, J'aurais été <i>I would have been.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

1 Je sois, <i>I may be,</i>	Nous soyons, <i>we may be.</i>
2 tu sois, <i>thou mayest be,</i>	vous soyez, <i>you may be.</i>
3 il soit, <i>he may be,</i>	ils soient, <i>they may be.</i>

PRETERITE.

1 Je fusse, <i>I might be,</i>	Nous fussions, <i>we might be.</i>
2 tu fusses, <i>thou mightest be,</i>	vous fussiez, <i>you might be.</i>
3 il fût, <i>he might be,</i>	ils fussent, <i>they might be.</i>

Compound of the present, J'aie été <i>I may have been.</i>	
Compound of the preterite, J'eusse été <i>I might have been.</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

no first person	soyons, <i>let us be.</i>
2 fois <i>be thou,</i>	soyez <i>be ye.</i>
3 qu'il soit, <i>let him be,</i>	qu'ils soient, <i>let them be.</i>

These two verbs *avoir* and *être*, help to conjugate all others in their compound tenses, and therefore must be perfectly learned. All verbs conjugated with the verb *to be* in english, take *être* in french; but all those conjugated with *to have* in english, are not with *avoir* in french; the following are excepted.

Verbs conjugated with to have in english and être in french.

All reflected and reciprocal verbs without any exception take, in their compound tenses, the auxiliary *être* in french and the auxiliary *to have* in english,

The 16 followings are all conjugated with *être* in french, and *to have* in english.

aller,	to go.	tomber,	to fall.
arriver,	to arrive.	venir,	to come.
déchoir,	to decay.	devenir,	to become.
décéder,	to die.	disconvenir,	to disagree.
entrer,	to come in.	intervenir,	to intervene.
mourir,	to die.	parvenir,	to attain.
naître,	to be born.	revenir,	to come back.
partir,	to set out.	survenir,	to happen.

These six *accourir*, to run to, *accroître*, to increase, *apparaître*, to appear, *croître* to grow, *disparaître*, to disappear and *périr* to perish, which are always conjugated with the auxiliary *to have* in english, are indifferently conjugated in french with *avoir*, or *être*.

Verbs which take avoir in one signification and être in an other.

These six verbs *accoucher*, *convenir*, *demeurer*, *descendre*, *monter* and *passer* take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses, according to the following distinction.

1° *accoucher* takes *avoir* when it means, to deliver a woman, *accoucher* takes *être*, when it means to be delivered as, *voire mère est accouchée; mon frère l'a accouchée*: your mother is brought to bed, my brother has delivered her.

2° *convenir* takes *avoir* when it means to be convenient; *convenir* takes *être* when it signifies to agree as, *voire maison auroit convenu à mon père; je suis fâché que vous ne soyez pas convenu de prix*. Your house would have suited my father, I am sorry you have not agreed upon the terms.

3° *demeurer* takes *avoir* when it signifies to live in; *demeurer* takes *être* when it signifies to remain as, *j'ai demeuré à Londres*, I have lived in London. *Il est demeuré inébranlable*, he has remained unmoveable.

4° *descendre* takes *avoir* when it governs an accusative case, and *être* when not as; *il a descendu l'escalier*, he has gone down stairs: *il est descendu d'une bonne famille*, he is descended from a good family.

5° *monter* takes *avoir* when it governs the accusative, and *être* when not as, *j'ai monté la colline*, I have ascended the

hill; je suis monté par degré aux charges militaires, I have ascended by degrees to military employments.

6° *passer* takes *avoir* when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun, and *être* when not as, *j'ai passé par la France*, I have passed through France. *Cette mode est passée*; that fashion is past.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of Regular Conjugations.

What forms the different conjugations, are the different terminations of verbs in their tenses and persons, and particularly of the infinitive mood; now, the infinitive of all our verbs ends, either in *ER*, *IR*, *OIR* or *RE*, as, *parler*, *agir*, *recevoir*, *faire*; which forms four general conjugations; however as the verbs which end in *IR* and *RE*, are conjugated different ways in the same tenses and persons, I admit of ten regular conjugations. One in *ER*, three in *IR*, one in *OIR*, and five in *RE*, which will greatly diminish the number of the irregular; and consequently facilitate the learning of verbs. They are as follows.

1 in <i>er</i>	<i>parler</i> , to speak.	{	<i>faire</i> , to do.
	<i>agir</i> , to act.		<i>craindre</i> , to fear.
3 in <i>ir</i>	<i>sentir</i> , to smell.		5 in <i>re</i> { <i>connoître</i> , to know,
	<i>tenir</i> , to hold.		<i>instruire</i> , to instruct.
4 in <i>oir</i>	<i>recevoir</i> , to receive.	{	<i>vendre</i> , to sell.

First Conjugation Parler.

INEINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	<i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
Gerund,	<i>parlant</i> ,	speaking.
Participle,	<i>parlé</i> .	spoken.
Compound of the present,	<i>avoir parlé</i> ,	to have spoken.
Compound of the gerund,	<i>ayant parlé</i> ,	having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>	Nous parlons,	<i>We speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speakest.</i>	vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>	ils parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je parlois,	<i>I did speak.</i>	Nous parlions,	<i>we did speak.</i>
tu parlois,	<i>thou didst speak.</i>	vous parliez,	<i>you did speak.</i>
il parloit,	<i>he did speak.</i>	ils parloient,	<i>they did speak.</i>

PRÆTERITE.

Je parlai,	<i>I spoke.</i>	Nous parlâmes,	<i>we spoke.</i>
tu parlâs,	<i>thou spokest.</i>	vous parlâtes,	<i>you spoke.</i>
il parla,	<i>he spoke.</i>	ils parlèrent,	<i>they spoke.</i>

FUTURE.

Je parlerai,	<i>I shall speak.</i>	Nous parlerons,	<i>we shall speak.</i>
tu parleras,	<i>thou shalt speak.</i>	vous parlerez,	<i>you shall speak.</i>
il parlera,	<i>he shall speak.</i>	ils parleront,	<i>they shall speak.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je parlerois,	<i>I would speak.</i>	Nous parlerions,	<i>we would speak.</i>
tu parlerois,	<i>thou wouldst speak.</i>	vous parleriez,	<i>you would speak.</i>
il parleroit,	<i>he would speak.</i>	ils parleroient,	<i>they would speak.</i>

Compound of the present.	J'ai parlé,	<i>I have spoken.</i>
Compound of the imperfect.	J'avois parlé,	<i>I had spoken.</i>
Compound of the præterite.	J'eus parlé,	<i>I had spoken.</i>
Compound of the future.	J'aurai parlé,	<i>I shall have spoken.</i>
Compound of the conditional.	J'aurois parlé,	<i>I would have spoken.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je parle,	<i>I may speak.</i>	Nous parlions,	<i>we may speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou mayest speak.</i>	vous parliez,	<i>you may speak.</i>
il parle,	<i>he may speak.</i>	ils parlent,	<i>they may speak.</i>

PRÆTERITE.

Je parlasse,	<i>I might speak.</i>	Nous parlâssions,	<i>we might speak.</i>
tu parlâsses,	<i>thou mightest speak.</i>	vous parlâssiez,	<i>you might speak.</i>
il parlât,	<i>he might speak.</i>	ils parlâssent,	<i>they might speak.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person.	Parlons, <i>let us speak.</i>
parle, <i>speak thou.</i>	parlez, <i>speak ye.</i>
qu'il parle, <i>let him speak.</i>	qu'ils parlent, <i>let them speak.</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1°. *Did* is the mark of the imperfect in all verbs, *shall* or *will* of the future, *would*, *could* or *should* of the conditional, *may* of the present subjunctive, *might* of the preterite and *let* of the imperative mood.

2°. Most of french verbs have the infinitive in *er*, and are conjugated the same as *parler*, except *aller*, *envoyer*, and *renvoyer* which are irregular. *Puer* makes in the present indicative *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*; the rest is regular.

3°. Verbs which end in *ayer* or *oyer* in the infinitive mood, take an *i* after *y* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive, as, *essayer*, *employer*. inf. *nous essayions*, *vous essayiez*, *nous employions*, *vous employiez*. imperf. ind. & pres. subj. See *Wailly Pag. 81*.

4°. Verbs which in the infinitive end in *ier*, are written with an *y* or double *ii* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive as, *prier*, *plier*. inf. *nous priions*, *nous plions*, *vous priez*, *vous pliez*, imperf. ind. & pres. subj. or *nous prions*, *vous priez*; See *Wailly pag. 81*

5°. We put an *e* between *g* and *a* or *o*, through the whole conjugation of verbs which end in *ger* in the infinitive mood. Thus we say, *juger*, *jugeant*, *je jugeois*, *nous jugeons*; *partager*, *je partageois*, &c. not *jugant*, *jugois*, as we say *parlant*, *parlois*.

N. B. As the compound tenses of all verbs regular and irregular are nothing else, than the conjugation of the verbs *avoir* or *être* and the participle of the verb conjugated; the scholar knowing well the auxiliaries, knows how to conjugate the compound tenses of all verbs; therefore I may be dispensed with inserting them in the following conjugations.

 Second Conjugation, Agir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	agir,	<i>to act.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	agissant,	<i>acting.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	agi,	<i>acted.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J'agis,	<i>I act,</i>	Nous agissons,	<i>we act.</i>
tu agis,	<i>thou actest,</i>	vous agissez,	<i>you act.</i>
il agit,	<i>he acts,</i>	ils agissent,	<i>they act.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'agissois,	<i>I did act,</i>	Nous agissions,	<i>we did act.</i>
tu agissois,	<i>thou didst act,</i>	vous agissiez,	<i>you did act.</i>
il agissoit,	<i>he did act,</i>	ils agissaient,	<i>they did act.</i>

PRETERITE.

J'agis,	<i>I acted,</i>	Nous agîmes,	<i>we acted.</i>
tu agis,	<i>thou actedst,</i>	vous agîtes,	<i>you acted.</i>
il agit,	<i>he acted,</i>	ils agirent,	<i>they acted.</i>

FUTURE.

J'agirai,	<i>I shall or will act,</i>	Nous agirons,	<i>we shall act.</i>
tu agiras,	<i>thou shalt &c. act,</i>	vous agirez,	<i>you shall act.</i>
il agira,	<i>he shall &c. act,</i>	ils agiront,	<i>they shall act.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

J'agirois,	<i>I would, &c. act,</i>	nous agirions,	<i>we would act.</i>
tu agirois,	<i>thou wouldst act,</i>	vous agiriez,	<i>you would act.</i>
il agiroit,	<i>he would act,</i>	ils agiroient	<i>they would act.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

J'agisse,	<i>I may act,</i>	nous agissions,	<i>we may act.</i>
tu agisses,	<i>thou mayest act,</i>	vous agissiez,	<i>you may act.</i>
il agisse,	<i>he may act,</i>	ils agissent,	<i>they may act.</i>

PRETERITE.

J'agisse,	<i>I might act,</i>	nous agissions,	<i>we might act.</i>
tu agisses,	<i>thou mightest act,</i>	vous agissiez,	<i>you might act.</i>
il agit,	<i>he might act,</i>	ils agissent,	<i>they might act.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>No first person.</i>		agissons,	<i>let us act.</i>
agis,	<i>act thou,</i>	agissez,	<i>act ye.</i>
qu'il agisse,	<i>let him act,</i>	qu'ils agissent,	<i>let them act.</i>

All verbs which end in *cir*, *dir*, *gir*, or *mir* in the infinitive mood, are regular in french and conjugated after *after sentir*.

Third Conjugation, Sentir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pr sent tense,</i>	sentir,	<i>to smell.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	sentant,	<i>smelling-</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	fenti,	<i>smelt.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je sents, <i>I smell,</i>	Nous sentons, -	<i>we smell.</i>
tu sents, <i>thou smellst,*</i>	vous sentez,	<i>you smell.</i>
il sent, <i>he smells,</i>	ils sentent,	<i>they smell.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je sentoais, <i>I did smell,</i>	Nous sentions,	<i>we did smell.</i>
tu sentoais, <i>thou didst smell,</i>	vous sentiez,	<i>you did smell.</i>
il sentoait, <i>he did smell,</i>	ils sentoient,	<i>they did smell.</i>

PRETERITE.

Je sentis, <i>I smelt,</i>	Nous sentimes,	<i>we smelt.</i>
tu sentis, <i>thou smellest,</i>	vous sentites,	<i>you smelt.</i>
il sentit, <i>he smelt,</i>	ils sentirent,	<i>they smelt.</i>

FUTURE.

Je sentirai, *I shall smell,* Nous sentirons, *we shall smell.*
 tu sentiras, *thou shalt smell,* vous sentirez, *you shall smell.*
 il sentira, *he shall smell,* ils sentiront, *they shall smell.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je sentirois, *I could smell,* Nous sentirions, *we could smell.*
 tu sentirois, *thou couldst smell,* vous sentiriez, *you could smell.*
 il sentiroit, *he could smell,* ils sentiraient, *they could smell.*

SUBJUNCTIVE. MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je sente, *I may smell,* Nous sentions, *we may smell.*
 tu sentes, *thou mayest smell,* vous sentiez, *you may smell.*
 il sente, *he may smell,* ils sentent, *they may smell.*

PRETERITE.

Je sentisse, *I might smell,* Nous sentissions, *we might smell.*
 tu sentisses, *thou mightest smell,* vous sentissiez, *you might smell.*
 il sentît, *he might smell,* ils sentissent, *they might smell.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person. Sentons, *let us smell.*
 fents, *smell thou,* sentez, *smell ye.*
 qu'il sente, *let him smell,* qu'ils sentent, *let them smell.*

N. B. All the verbs which end in *tir* in the infinitive, are regular except *vêtir* & *revêtir*, and those derived from them. *Dormir* and *servir* are also conjugated after *sentir*, though they have not the infinitive in *tir*.

Fourth Conjugation, Tenir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	tenir,	<i>to hold.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	tenant,	<i>holding.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	tenu,	<i>held.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je tiens, *I hold,*
tu tiens, *thou holdest,*
il tient, *he hold,*

Nous tenons, *we hold.*
vous tenez, *you hold.*
ils tiennent, *they hold.*

IMPERFECT.

Je tenois *I did hold,*
tu tenois, *thou did'st hold,*
il tenoit, *he did hold,*

Nous tenions, *we did hold.*
vous teniez, *you did hold.*
ils tenoient, *they did hold.*

PRETERITE.

Je tins, *I held,*
tu tins, *thou heldest,*
il tint, *he held,*

Nous tinmes *we held.*
vous tintes, *you held.*
ils tinrent, *they held.*

FUTURE.

Je tiendrai, *I shall hold,*
tu tiendras, *thou shalt hold,*
il tiendra, *he shall hold,*

Nous tiendrons, *we shall hold.*
vous tiendrez, *you shall hold,*
ils tiendront, *they shall hold.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je tiendrais, *I would hold,*
tu tiendrais, *thou wouldst hold,*
il tiendrait, *he would hold,*

Nous tiendrions, *we would hold.*
vous tiendriez, *you would hold.*
ils tiendraient, *they would hold.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je tienne, *I may hold,*
tu tiennes, *thou mayest hold,*
il tienne, *he may hold,*

Nous tenions, *we may hold.*
vous teniez, *you may hold.*
ils tiennent, *they may hold.*

PRETERITE.

Je tinssse, *I might hold,*
tu tinsses, *thou mightest hold,*
il tint, *he might hold,*

Nous tinssions, *we might hold,*
vous tinssiez, *you might hold.*
ils tinssent, *they might hold.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person.
tiens, *hold thou,*
qu'il tienne, *let him hold,*

tenons, *let us hold.*
tenez, *hold ye.*
qu'ils tiennent, *let them hold.*

All the verbs which end in enir, are regular and conjugated after tenir in all their tenses and persons, except benir to bless which is conjugated on agir.

The Fifth Conjugation Recevoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>present tense,</i>	recevoir,	<i>to receive.</i>
<i>gerund,</i>	recevant,	<i>receiving.</i>
<i>participle,</i>	reçu,	<i>received.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je reçois *I receive,*
tu reçois, *thou receivest,*
il reçoit, *he receives,*

Nous recevons, *we receive.*
vous recevez, *you receive,*
ils reçoivent, *they receive.*

IMPERFECT.

Je recevois, *I did receive,*
tu recevois, *thou did'st,*
il recevoit, *he did,*

Nous recevions, *we did.*
vous receviez, *you did.*
ils recevoient, *they did.*

PRETERITE.

Je reçus, *I received,*
tu reçus, *thou received'st,*
il recut, *he received,*

Nous reçûmes, *we received,*
vous reçûtes, *you received.*
ils reçurent, *they received.*

FUTURE.

Je recevrai, *I shall receive,*
tu recevras, *thou shalt,*
il recevra, *he shall,*

Nous recevrons, *we shall,*
vous recevrez, *you shall,*
ils recevront, *they shall.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je recevrais, *I would receive,*
tu recevrais, *thou wouldst*
il recevrait, *he would,*

Nous recevriions, *we would.*
vous recevriez, *you would.*
ils recevraient, *they would.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je reçoive, <i>I may receive,</i>	Nous recevions, <i>we may.</i>
tu reçoives, <i>thou mayest,</i>	vous receviez, <i>you may,</i>
il reçoive, <i>he may</i>	ils reçoivent, <i>they may.</i>

PRETERITE.

Je reçusse, <i>I might receive,</i>	Nous reçussions, <i>we might.</i>
tu reçusses, <i>thou mightest,</i>	vous reçussiez, <i>you might.</i>
il reçût, <i>he might,</i>	ils reçussent, <i>they might.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>No first person.</i>	Recevons, <i>let us receive.</i>
reçois, <i>receive thou,</i>	recevez, <i>receive ye.</i>
qu'il reçoive, <i>let him receive,</i>	qu'ils reçoivent, <i>let them. &c.</i>

N B. *All the verbs which end in avoir in the infinitive mood are regular and conjugated after recevoir ; and all those which end in oir, not preceded by ev, are irregular : such are pouvoir, savoir, vouloir &c.*

Conjugation the Sixth, Faire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	faire,	<i>to do.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	faisant, *	<i>doing.</i>
<i>Participle</i>	fait,	<i>done.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
Je fais, <i>I do,</i>	Nous faisons,	<i>we do.</i>
tu fais, <i>thou doest,</i>	vous faites,	<i>you do.</i>
il fait, <i>he does,</i>	ils font,	<i>they do.</i>

* We Write also *faisant, je faisais, tu faisais, il faisoit &c.*

REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

IMPERFECT.

Je fesois, *I did,*
tu fesois, *thou didst,*
il fesoit, *he did,*

Nous fesiions, *we did.*
vous fesiez, *you did.*
ils fesoient, *they did.*

PRETERITE.

Je fis, *I did,*
tu fis, *thou didst,*
il fit, *he did,*

Nous fimes, *we did.*
vous fites, *you did.*
ils firent, *they did.*

FUTURE.

Je ferai, *I shall do,*
tu feras, *thou shalt do,*
il fera, *he shall do,*

Nous ferons, *we shall do.*
vous ferez, *you shall do.*
ils feront, *they shall do.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je ferois, *I would do,*
tu ferois, *thou wouldst do,*
il feroit, *he would do,*

Nous ferions, *we would do.*
vous feriez, *you would do.*
ils feroient, *they would do.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je fasse, *I may do,*
tu fasses, *thou mayest do,*
il fasse, *he may do,*

Nous fassions, *we may do.*
vous fassiez, *you may do.*
ils fassent, *they may do.*

PRETERITE.

Je fissé, *I might do,*
tu fissés, *thou mightest do,*
il fit, *he might do,*

Nous fissions, *we might do.*
vous fissiez, *you might do.*
ils fissent, *they might do.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person,
fais, *do thou,*
qu'il fasse, *let him do,*

faisons, *let us do.*
faites, *do ye.*
qu'ils fassent, *let them do.*

N B. All the compounds of faire are conjugated in the same ways, and all other which end in aire in the infinitive such as plaire, traire &c. are irregular.

The Seventh Conjugation, Craindre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense, craindre, to fear.
Gerund, craignant, fearing.
Participle, craint, feared.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je crains, I fear, Nous craignons, we fear.
tu crains, thou fearest, vous craignez, you fear.
il craint, he fears, ils craignent, they fear.

IMPERFECT.

Je craignois, I did fear, Nous craignions, we did fear.
tu craignois, thou didst fear, vous craigniez, you did fear.
il craignoit, he did fear, ils craignoient, they did fear.

PRETERITE.

Je craignis, I feared, Nous craignîmes, we feared.
tu craignis, thou fearedst, vous craignîtes, you feared.
il craignit, he feared, ils craignirent, they feared.

FUTURE.

Je craindrai, I shall fear, Nous craindrons, we shall fear.
tu craindras, thou shalt fear, vous craindrez, you shall fear.
il craindra, he shall fear, ils craindront, they shall fear.

CONDITIONAL.

Je craindrois, I would fear, Nous craindrions, we would.
tu craindrois, thou wouldst fear, vous craindriez, you would.
il craindrait, he would fear, ils craindraient, they would.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je craigne, I may fear, Nous craignons, we may &c.
tu craignes, thou mayest fear, vous craigniez, you may &c.
il craigne, he may fear, ils craignent, they may. &c.

PRETERITE.

Je craignisse, *I might fear*, Nous craignissions, *we might*.
 tu craignisses, *thou might fear*, vous craignissiez, *you might*.
 il craignît, *he might fear*, ils craignissent, *they might*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person,
 crains, *fear thou*, craignons, *let us fear*.
 qu'il craigne, *let him fear*, craignez, *fear ye*.
 qu'ils craignent, *let them fear*.

N B. All the verbs which end in infinitive in aindre, eindre or oindre are regular and conjugated on craindre.

Conjugation the Eighth, Connoître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense, Connoître, *to know*.
Gerund, connoissant, *knowing*.
Participle, connu, *known*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je connois, *I know*, Nous connoissons, *we know*.
 tu connois, *thou knowest*, vous connoissez, *you know*.
 il connoit, *he knows*, ils connoissent, *they know*.

IMPERFECT.

Je connoissois, *I did know*, Nous connoissions, *we did know*.
 tu connoissois, *thou didst &c.* vous connoissiez, *you did know*.
 il connoissoit, *he did know*, ils connoissoient, *they did know*.

PRETERITE.

Je connus, *I knew*, Nous connûmes, *we knew*.
 tu connus, *thou knewest*, vous connûtes, *you knew*.
 il connut, *he knew*, ils connurent, *they knew*.

FUTURE.

Je connoîtrai, *I shall know* Nous connoîtrons, *we shall know*
tu connoîtras, *thou shalt &c.* vous connoîtrez, *you shall know*
il connoîtra, *he shall know*, ils connoîtront *they shall know.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je connoîtrois, *I should.* Nous connoîtrions, *we should &c.*
tu connoîtrois, *thou should'st.* vous connoîtriez, *you should &c.*
il connoîtroit, *he should.* ils connoîtroient, *they should.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je connoisse, *I may know*, Nous connoissions, *we may know.*
tu connoisses, *thou mayest*, vous connoissiez, *you may know.*
il connoisse, *he may*, ils connoissent, *they may know.*

PRETERITE.

Je connusse, *I might*, Nous connussions, *we might know.*
tu connusses, *thou mig.* vous connussiez, *you might know.*
il connût, *he might &c.* ils connussent, *they might know.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person. Connoissons, *let us know.*
connois, *know thou.* connoissez, *know ye.*
qu'il connoisse, *let him.* qu'ils connoissent, *let them know.*

N. B. All verbs which end in *oître* in the present infinitive are regular and conjugated on *connoître*.

Conjugation the Ninth, Instruire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	instruire,	to instruct.
Gerund,	instruisant,	instructing.
Participle.	instruit,	instructed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J'instruis, *I instruct.* Nous instruisons, *we instruct.*
 tu instruis, *thou instructest.* vous instruisez, *you instruct.*
 il instruit, *he instructs.* ils instruisent, *they instruct.*

IMPERFECT.

J'instruisois, *I did instruct.* Nous instruisions, *we did inst.*
 tu instruisois, *thou did'st inst.* vous instruissiez, *you did instruct.*
 il instruisoit, *he did instruct.* ils instruisoient *they did instruct.*

PRETERITE.

J'instruisis. *I instructed.* Nous instruisîmes, *we instructed.*
 tu instruisis, *thou instructed'st.* vous instruisîtes, *you instructed.*
 il instruisit, *he instructed.* ils instruisirent, *they instructed.*

FUTURE.

J'instruirai, *I will instruct.* Nous instruirons, *we will &c.*
 tu instruiras. *thou wilt inst.* vous instruirez, *you will instruct.*
 il instruira, *he will instruct.* ils instruiront, *they will instruct.*

CONDITIONAL.

J'instruirois, *I would &c.* Nous instruirions, *we would. &c.*
 tu instruirois, *thou wouldest.* vous instruiriez, *you would &c.*
 il instruirait, *he would.* ils instruiroient, *they would &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

J'instruise, *I may instruct.* Nous instruisions, *we may inst.*
 tu instruises, *thou mayest.* vous instruisiez, *you may instruct.*
 il instruise, *he may instruct.* ils instruisent, *they may instruct.*

PRETERITE.

J'instruisisse, *I might inst.* Nous instruisissions, *we might.*
 tu instruisisses, *thou mightest.* vous instruisissiez, *you might.*
 il instruisît, *he might inst.* ils instruisissent, *they might inst.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person. Instruisons, *let us instruct.*
 instruis, *instruct thou.* instruisez, *instruct ye.*
 qu'il instruise, *let him inst.* qu'ils instruisent, *let them inst.*

All verbs of good use which end in *uire* in the infinitive mood, are regular and conjugated on *instruire*, except *luire* to shine, *réluire* to glitter & *nuire* to hurt, which make in the participle *lui*, *rélui* & *nui*; but other tenses are regular.

Conjugation the Tenth, Vendre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

present tense,	vendre,	to sell.
gerund,	vendant,	selling.
participle,	vendu,	sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je vends, I sell,
tu vends, thou sellest,
il vend, he sells,

Nous vendons, we sell.
vous vendez, you sell,
ils vendent, they sell.

IMPERFECT.

Je vendois, I did sell,
tu vendois, thou did sell,
il vendoit, he did sell,

Nous vendions, we did sell.
vous vendiez, you did sell.
ils vendoient, they did sell.

PRETERITE.

Je vendis, I sold,
tu vendis, thou seldest,
il vendit, he sold,

Nous vendîmes, we sold.
vous vendîtes, you sold.
ils vendirent, they sold.

FUTURE.

Je vendrai, I shall sell,
tu vendras, thou shalt sell,
il vendra, he shall sell,

Nous vendrons, we shall,
vous vendrez, you shall sell,
ils vendront, they shall sell.

CONDITIONAL.

Je vendrois, I would sell,
tu vendrois, thou wouldst sell,
il vendroit, he would sell,

Nous vendrions, we would sell.
vous vendriez, you would sell.
ils vendroient, they would sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je vende, <i>I may sell</i>	Nous vendions, <i>we may sell.</i>
tu vendes, <i>thou mayest sell,</i>	vous vendiez, <i>you may sell.</i>
il vende, <i>he may sell,</i>	ils vendent, <i>they may sell.</i>

PRETERITE.

Je vendisse, <i>I might sell,</i>	Nous vendissions, <i>we might sell.</i>
tu vendisses, <i>thou mightest sell,</i>	vous vendissiez, <i>you might sell.</i>
il vendît, <i>he might sell,</i>	ils vendissent, <i>they might sell.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>No first person.</i>	vendons,	<i>let us sell.</i>
vends; <i>sell thou,</i>	vendez,	<i>sell ye</i>
qu'il vende, <i>let him sell.</i>	qu'ils vendent,	<i>let them sell.</i>

N B. *All verbs ending in attre, endre, or ondre, are regular and conjugated on vendre, except prendre to take, and its compounds which are irregular.*

SECTION THE FIFTH.

Conjugation of a Reflected Verb.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>present tense,</i>	se lever,	<i>to rise.</i>
<i>gerund,</i>	se levant,	<i>rising.</i>
<i>participle,</i>	levé,	<i>risen.</i>
<i>compound of the present,</i>	s'être levé,	<i>to have risen.</i>
<i>compound of the gerund,</i>	s'étant levé,	<i>having risen.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je me leve, *I rise*,
tu te leves, *thou risest*,
il se leve, *he rises*,

Nous nous levons, *we rise*.
vous vous levez, *you rise*.
ils se levent, *they rise*.

IMPERFECT.

Je me levois, *I did rise*,
tu te levois, *thou didst rise*,
il se levoit, *he did rise*.

Nous nous levions, *we did rise*.
vous vous leviez, *you did rise*.
ils se levoient, *they did rise*.

PRETERITE.

Je me levai, *I rose*,
tu te levais, *thou rosest*,
il se leva, *he rose*,

Nous nous levâmes, *we rose*.
vous vous levâtes, *you rose*,
ils se levèrent, *they rose*.

FUTURE.

Je me levrai, *I shall rise*,
tu te levras, *thou shalt rise*,
il se levra, *he shall rise*.

Nous nous leverons, *we shall rise*.
vous vous levrez, *you shall rise*.
ils se levront, *they shall rise*.

CONDITIONAL.

Je me levrais, *I would rise*,
tu te levrais, *thou wouldst*,
il se levrait, *he would*,

Nous nous leverions, *we would*.
vous vous levriez, *you would*.
ils se levraient, *they would*.

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMP. OF THE PRESENT.

Je me suis levé, *I have risen*,
tu t'es levé, *thou hast*,
il s'est levé, *he has risen*,

Nous nous sommes levé, *we &c.*
vous vous êtes levé, *you have*.
ils se sont levé, *they have*.

COMP. OF THE IMPERF.

Je m'étois levé, *I had risen*,
tu t'étois levé, *thou hadst*,
il s'étoit levé, *he had*,

Nous nous étions levé, *we &c.*
vous vous étiez levé, *you had*.
ils s'étoient levé, *they had*.

REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

COMP. OF THE PRETERITE.

Je me fus levé, *I had risen,* Nous nous fûmes levé, *we &c.*
 tu te fus levé, *thou hadst,* vous vous fûtes levé, *you had.*
 il se fut levé, *he had risen.* ils se furent levé, *they had.*

COMP. OF THE FUTURE.

Je me serai levé, Nous nous serons levé,
I shall have risen, *we shall have risen*
 tu te seras levé, vous vous serez levé,
thou shalt have risen, *you shall have risen,*
 il se sera levé, ils se seront levé,
he shall have risen, *they shall have risen.*

COMP. OF THE CONDITIONAL.

Je me serois levé, Nous nous serions levé,
I would have risen, *we would have risen*
 tu te serois levé, vous vous seriez levé,
thou wouldst have risen, *you would have risen,*
 il se seroit levé, ils se seroient levé,
he would have risen, *they would have risen.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Je me lève, *I may rise.* Nous nous levons, *we may rise.*
 tu te leves, *thou mayest rise.* vous vous levez, *you may rise,*
 il se leve, *he may rise.* ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

PRETERITE.

Je me levasse, *I might rise.* Nous nous levassions, *we might.*
 tu te levasses, *thou mightest,* vous vous levassiez, *you might.*
 il se levât, *he might rise.* ils se levassent, *they might rise.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMP. OF THE PRESENT.

Je me sois levé,
I may have risen.
tu te sois levé,
thou mayest have risen.
il se soit levé,
he may have risen.

Nous nous soyons levé,
we may have risen.
vous vous soyez levé,
you may have risen.
ils se soient levé,
they may have risen.

COMP. OF THE PRET.

Je me fusse levé,
I might have risen,
tu te fusses levé,
thou mightest have risen,
il se fût levé,
he might have risen,

Nous nous fussions levé.
we might have risen.
vous vous fussiez levé.
you might have risen.
ils se fussent levé.
they might have risen,

IMPERATIVE.

No first person
leve toi, *rise thou,*
qu'il se leve, *let him rise,*

levons nous *let us rise.*
levez vous, *rise you.*
qu'ils se levent, *let them rise.*

OBSERVATIONS.

1° All reflected verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in french, and *to have* in english in their compound tenses.

2° They are also conjugated with two pronouns relative to the same object. *Je, me,* is used for the first person of the singular number; *tu, te,* for the second; *il, or elle,* for the third: *nous nous* for the first of the plural number; *vous vous,* for the second; *ils or elles, se* for the third as before.

3° Most passive verbs which have an animate object for their nominative case, are reflected in french as; *les mauvaises nouvelles se repandent plus promptement que les bonnes*; bad news are sooner spread about than good ones.

4° The verbs which are followed in english, by the pronouns *myself, thyself, himself* &c. answer exactly to the french

reflected; the following have no pronouns in english and could no be easily distinguished, and therefore must be learned by heart.

VERBS REFLECTED IN FRENCH.

s'abonner,	to compound.	s'évaporer,	to evaporate.
s'abstenir,	to abstain.	s'évertuer,	to strive.
s'accorder,	to agree,	se farder,	to paint.
s'accouder,	to lean upon.	se fier,	to trust.
s'asseoir,	to sit down.	se figurer,	to fancy.
s'attacher,	to stick.	se flétrir,	to fade away.
se baisser,	to stoop.	se fondre,	to melt.
se cantonner,	to canton.	se formaliser,	to find fault.
se baigner,	to bathe.	se glisser,	to creep in.
se coucher,	to go to bed.	se hâter,	to make haste.
se débattre,	to struggle.	s'imaginer,	to fancy.
se déborder,	to flow over.	s'ingerer,	to intermeddle.
se dédire,	to retract,	s'insinuer,	to steal in.
se défier,	to distrust.	se lever,	to rise.
se dépêcher,	to make haste.	se liquéfier,	to liquefy.
se démettre,	to resign.	se marier,	to marry.
se désister.	to give over.	se méfier,	to distrust.
s'élancer,	to leap upon.	se méprendre.	to mistake.
s'en aller,	to go away.	se moquer,	to laugh at,
s'emparer,	to seize upon.	se mutiner,	to mutiny.
s'empresier,	to be eager.	se piquer,	to pretend to.
s'endormir,	to fall asleep.	se plaindre,	to complain.
s'enfuir,	to run away.	se promener,	to walk.
s'en hardir	to grow bold.	se réjouir,	to rejoice.
s'enraciner,	to take root.	se repentir,	to repent.
s'enrhumer,	to catch cold.	se reposer,	to rest.
s'enrichir,	to grow rich.	se ressouvenir,	to remember.
s'entretenir,	to discourse with.	se révolter,	to rebel.
s'envoler,	to fly away.	se saisir,	to seize upon.
s'épanouir,	to blow.	se soumettre,	to submit.
s'esquiver	to steal away.	se souvenir,	to remember.
s'étonner,	to wonder.	se vanter,	to boast.
s'évanouir,	to faint away.		

SECTION THE SIXTH.

Several manners of conjugating a verb.

1°. WITH NEGATION. Inf. pres. *ne pas donner*, not to give; *ne donnant pas*, not giving.

Ind. pres. *Je ne donne pas*, I do not give; *tu ne donnes pas*, thou dost not give; *il ne donne pas*, he does not give; *nous ne donnons pas*, we do not give; *vous ne donnez pas*, you do not give; *ils ne donnent pas*; they do not give. And so on for all other tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods.

Compound tenses *je n'ai pas donné*, I have not given; *tu n'as pas donné*, thou hast not given; *il n'a pas donné*, he has not given &c, and so on for all compound tenses and persons.

2°. WITH INTERROGATION. Imp. ind. *Punissois-je*, did I punish? *punissois-tu*, didst thou punish? *punissait-il*, did he punish? *punissions-nous*, did we punish? *punissiez-vous*, did you punish; *punissaient-ils*, did they punish.

Compound tenses. *Ai-je puni*, have I punished? *as-tu puni*, hast thou punished? *a-t-il puni*, has he punished? and so on for other tenses.

3°. WITH NEGATION AND INTERROGATION. Pret. Ind. *Ne marchai-je pas*, did I not walk? *ne marchas-tu pas*, didst thou not walk? *ne marcha-t-il pas*, did he not walk? *ne marchâmes-nous pas*, did we not walk? *ne marchâtes-vous pas*, did you not walk? *ne marchèrent-ils pas*, did they not walk?

Compound tenses. *N'ai-je pas marché*, have I not walked? *n'as-tu pas marché*, hast thou not walked? *n'a-t-il pas marché*, has he not walked? and so on for all other persons.

4°. WITH PRONOUNS. Fut. *Je les vendrai*, I will sell them; *tu les vendras*, thou wilt sell them; *il les vendra*, he will sell them; *nous les vendrons*, we will sell them; *vous les vendrez*, you will sell them; *ils les vendront*, they will sell them.

Compound tenses. *Je les ai vendu*, I have sold them; *tu les as vendu*, thou hast sold them; *il les a vendu*, he has sold them &c.

5°. WITH NEGATION AND PRONOUNS. Cond. *Je ne le connoîtrois pas*, I should not know him; *tu ne le connoîtrois pas*, thou shouldst not know him; *il ne le connoîtroit pas*, he should not know him; *nous ne le connoîtrions pas*, we should not know him; *vous ne le connoîtriez pas*, you should not know him; *ils ne le connoîtroient pas*, they should not know him.

Compound tenses. *Je ne l'ai pas connu*, I have not known him; *tu ne l'as pas connu*, thou hast not known him; *il ne l'a pas connu*, he has not known him &c.

6°. WITH INTERROGATION AND PRONOUNS. Fut. ind. *Les verrai-je*, shall I see them? *les verras-tu*, shalt thou see them? *les verra-t-il*, shall he see them? *les verrons nous*, shall we see them? *les verrez-vous*, shall you see them? *les verront-ils*, shall they see them?

Compound tenses. *Les ai-je vu*, have I seen them? *les as-tu vu*, hast thou seen them? *les a-t-il vu*, has he seen them?

This method of conjugating verbs is very useful for the understanding of the rules of the syntax; therefore I recommend it, particularly to children.



SECTION THE SEVENTH.

Conjugation of all the irregular verbs.

I. ABSOUDRE to absolve. *

Inf. Absoudre, to absolve. *Part.* absous, absolved.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	J'absou	-s,	s;	t;	absolv	-ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'absolv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	absolv	-ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'absoud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	absoud	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'absoud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	absoud	-rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S.P.</i>	J'absolv	-e,	es,	e;	absolv	-ions,	iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Abso		-us,	lve;	absolv	-ons,	ez, ent.

Abstraire to abstract, on traire 35.

Accourir to run to, on courir 10.

Accueillir to welcome, on cueillir 12,

II. ACQUERIR to acquire.

Inf. Acquérir, to acquire. *Ger.* acquérant, acquiring.

Part. aquis acquired.

<i>Pres.</i>	J'acquie	-rs,	rs.	rt,	acquér	-ons,	ez, ent,
<i>Imp.</i>	J'acquér	-ois,	ois,	oit;	acquér	-ions.	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'acqu	-is,	is,	it;	acqu	-îmes,	îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'acquier	-rai,	ras,	ra;	acquier	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'acquier	-rois,	rois,	roit;	acquér	-rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S.P.</i>	J'acquiér	-e,	es,	e;	acquiér	-ions,	iez, ent.

* The Pupil must repeat the english words which answer to every tense and person of the french verbs; this will be an easy task, if he remember that to is the mark of the present of the infinitive, did of the imperfect of the indicative, shall or will of the future, would, could or should of the conditional, may of the present of the subjunctive, might of the preterite and let of the imperative mood. The figures 1, 2, 3, denote the persons of the sing. & plur.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pret.</i> J'acqu	-isse,	isses,	ît;	acqu	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i> Acquie	-rs	re;		acquér	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Admettre to admit, on mettre 19.

III. ALLER to go.

<i>Inf.</i> Aller, to go.	<i>Ger.</i> allant, going.	<i>Part.</i> allé, gone.
<i>Pres.</i> Je vais,	vas, va;	allons, allez, vont.
<i>Imp.</i> J'all	-ois, ois, ois;	all -ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'all	-ai, as, a;	all -âmes, âtes, êrent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'i	-rai, ras, ra;	i -rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> J'i	-rois, rois, roit;	i -rions, riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> J'aill	-e, es, e;	all -ions, iez, aillent.
<i>Pret.</i> J'all	-asse, asses, ât;	all -affions, affiez, assent.
<i>Imp.</i>	vas, aille;	allons, allons, aillent.

Apprendre to learn, on prendre 28.

Affaillir to assault, on cueillir 12.

IV. S'ASSEoir to sit down.

<i>Inf.</i> S'asseoir, to sit.&c.	<i>Ger.</i> s'asséyant, sitting.	<i>Part.</i> assis, sat.
<i>Pres.</i> Je m'ass	-ieds, ieds, ied;	assé -yons, yez, ient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je m'asséy	-ois, ois, oit;	asséy -ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je m'ass	-is, is, it;	ass -îmes, îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je m'asséi	-rai, ras, ra;	asséi -rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je m'asséi	-rois, rois, roit;	asséi -rions, riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je m'asséi	-e, es, e;	assé -yons, yez, ient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je m'ass	-isse, isses, ît;	ass -issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imp.</i> Assie	ds, ie;	assé -yons, yez, ient.

V. BOIRE to drink.

<i>Inf.</i> Boire, to drink.	<i>Ger.</i> buvant, drinking.	<i>Part.</i> bu, drank.
<i>Pres.</i> Je boi	-s, s, t;	buv -ons, ez, boivent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je buv	-ois, ois, oit;	buv -ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je b	-us, us, ut;	b -ûmes, ûtes, ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je boi	-rai, ras, ra;	boi -rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je boi	-rois, rois, roit;	boi -rions, riez, roient.

IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

87

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
S. P.	Je boiv	-e,	es, e;	buv	-ions,	iez,	boivent.
Pret.	Je b	-usse,	usses,ût;	b	-ussions	ussiez,	ussent.
Imp.			bois, boive;		buvons,	buvez,	boivent.

VI. BOUILLIR. *to boil.*

Inf. Bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je bou	-s,	s,	t;	bouill	-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je bouill	-ois,	ois,	oit;	bouill	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je bouill	-is,	is,	it;	bouill	-îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je bouilli	-rai,	ras,	ra;	bouilli	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je bouilli	-rois,	rois,	roit;	bouilli	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je bouill	-e,	es,	e;	bouill	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je bouill	-isse,	isses,	ît;	bouill	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>			Bous,	bouille;	bouill	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Circonscrire *to circumscribe, on écrire* 14.

Comprendre *to understand on prendre* 28.

Commettre *to commit on mettre* 19.

Complaire *to please, on plaire* 25.

Compromettre *to expose, on mettre* 19.

VII. CONCLURE *to Conclude.*

Inf. Conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.* *Part.* conclu, *concluded.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je concl	-us,	us,	ut;	conclu	-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je conclu	-ois,	ois,	oit;	conclu	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je concl	-us,	us,	ut;	conclû	-mes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je conclu	-rai,	ras,	ra;	conclu	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je conclu	-rois,	rois,	roit;	conclu	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je conclu	-e,	es,	e;	conclu	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je concl	-usse,	usses,	ût;	concl	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Concl		-us,	ue;	conclu	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Concourir *to concur, on courir* 10.

VIII. CONFIRE *to pickle.**Inf.* Confire, *to pickle.* *Part.* confit. *pickled.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	confis -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>imp.</i>	Je confis -ois,	ois,	oit;	confis -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je conf -is,	is.	it;	conf -îmes	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je confi -rai,	ras,	ra;	confi -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je confi -rois,	rois,	roit;	confi -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je conf -isse,	isses,	ît;	conf -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Conf	is,	ise;	confis -ons,	ez,	ent.

Conquérir *to conquer*, *on* acquérir 2.Contrédire *to contradict*, *on* dire 13.Convaincre *to convince*, *on* vaincre 36.IX. COUDRE, *to sew.**Inf.* Coudre, *to sew.* *Ger.* cousant, *sewing.* *Part.* cousu, *sewed.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je cou -s,	s,	t;	cous, -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je coud -ois,	ois,	oit;	coud -ions,	iez,	oient
<i>Pret.</i>	Je coud -is,	is,	it;	coud -îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>*Fut.</i>	Je coud -rai,	ras,	ra;	coud -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je coud -rois,	rois,	roit;	coud -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je coud -e,	es,	e;	cous ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je coud -isse,	isses,	ît;	coud -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Cou	-s,	se;	coud -ons,	ez,	ent.

X. COURIR, *to run.**Inf.* Courir, *to run.* *Ger.* courant, *running.* *Part.* couru, *run.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je cou -rs,	rs,	rt;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je cour -ois,	ois,	oit;	cour -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cour -us,	us,	ut;	cour -ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je cour -rai,	ras,	ra;	cour -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je cour -rois,	rois,	roit;	cour -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je cour -e,	es,	e;	cour -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cour -usse,	usses,	ût;	cour -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Cour	s,	e;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.

Couvrir *to cover*, *on* offrir 23.

XI. CROIRE, to believe.

Inf. Croire, to believe. *Ger.* croyant, believing. *Part.* cru, believed.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je croi -s,	s,	t;	croÿ -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je croy -ois,	ois,	oit;	croÿ -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cr -us,	us,	ut;	cr -âmes,	âtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je croi -rai,	ras,	ra;	croi -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je croi -rois,	rois,	roit;	croi -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je croi -e,	es,	e;	cro -yions,	yiez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cr -usse,	usses,	ût;	cr -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Croi	s,	e;	cro -yons,	yez,	ient.

XII. CUEILLIR, to gather.

Inf. Cueillir, to gather. *Ger.* cueillant, gathering. *Part.* cueilli, gathered.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je cueill -e,	es,	e;	cueill -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je cueill -ois,	ois,	oit;	cueill -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cueill -is,	is,	it;	cueill -âmes,	âtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je cueille -rai,	ras,	ra;	cueille -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je cueille -rois,	rois,	roit;	cueille -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je cueill -e,	es,	e;	cueill -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cueill -isse,	isses,	ît;	cueill -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Cueill	-e,	e;	cueill -ons,	ez,	ent.

Découdre to unsew, on coudre 9.

Découvrir to discover, on offrir 23.

Dédire to unsay, on dire 13.

Décrire to describe, on écrire 14.

Démettre to put out, on mettre 19.

Se démontrer to resign, on mettre 19.

Déplaire to displease, on plaire 25.

Déapprendre to unlearn, on prendre 20.

XIII. DIRE, to say.

Inf. dire, to say. *Ger.* disant, saying. *Part.* dit, said.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je d -is,	is,	it;	dis -ons,	dites,	disent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je dis -ois,	ois,	oit;	dis -ions,	iez,	oient.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je d -is,	is,	it;	d -îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je di -rai,	ras,	ra;	di -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je di -rois,	rois,	roit;	di -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je dis -e,	es;	e;	dis -ions,	iez,	sent.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je d -isse,	isses,	it;	d -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	d	-is,	ise;	dis -ons,	dites,	dissent.
	Discourir	<i>to discourse,</i>		on courir	10.	
	Dissoudre	<i>to dissolve,</i>		on absoudre	1.	
	Distraindre	<i>to distract,</i>		on traire	35.	

XIV. ECRIRE, *to write.*

Inf. écrire, *to write.* *Ger.* écrivant, *writing.* *Part.* écrit, *written.*

<i>Pres.</i>	J'écr -is,	is	it;	écriv -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'écriv -ois,	ois,	oit;	écriv -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pres.</i>	J'écriv -is,	is,	it;	écriv -îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'écri -rai,	ras,	ra;	écri -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'écri -rois,	rois,	roit;	écri -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	J'écriv -e,	es,	e;	écriv -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pres.</i>	J'écriv -isse,	isses,	it;	écriv -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	écr	is,	ive;	écriv -ons,	ez,	ent.
	Elire	<i>to elect,</i>		on lire	18.	
	Emoudre	<i>to grind,</i>		on moudre	20.	
	Encourir	<i>to incur.</i>		on courir	10.	
	S'entremettre	<i>to interpose,</i>		on mettre	19.	
	Entreprendre	<i>to undertake,</i>		on prendre	28.	
	Entrevoir	<i>to have a glimpse;</i>		on voir	39.	
	Entrouvrir	<i>to open a little,</i>		on offrir	23.	

XV. ENVOYER, *to send.*

Inf. envoyer, *to send.* *Ger.* envoyant, *sending.* *Part.* envoyé, *sent.*

<i>Pres.</i>	J'envo -e,	es,	e;	envo -yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'envoy -ois,	ois,	oit;	envoy -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pres.</i>	J'envoy -ai,	as,	a;	envoy -âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'enver -rai,	ras,	ra;	enver -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'enver -rois,	rois,	roit;	enver -rions,	riez,	roient.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>S. P.</i> J'envoï	-e,	es,	e;	envo -yions,	yiez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'envoy	-asse,	asses,	ât;	envoy -affions,	affiez,	assent.
<i>Imp.</i> envoï	-e,	e;		envo -yons,	yez,	ient.
Equivaloir	<i>to be equal,</i>			<i>ou valoir</i>	37.	
Exclure	<i>to exclude,</i>			<i>ou conclure</i>	7.	
Extraire	<i>to extract,</i>			<i>ou traire</i>	35.	

XVI. FUIR, *to shun.*

<i>Inf.</i> fuir, <i>to shun.</i>	<i>Ger.</i> fuyant, <i>shunning.</i>	<i>Part.</i> fui, <i>shun.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Je fu -is,	is, it;	fuy -ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je fuy -ois,	ois, oit;	fuy -ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fu -is,	is, it;	fu -imes, îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je fui -rai,	ras, ra;	fui -rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je fui -rois,	rois, roit;	fui -rions, riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je fui -e,	es, e;	fu -yions, yiez, ient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fu -isse,	isses, ît;	fu -issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imp.</i> Fu	is, ie;	fu -yons, yez, ient.

XVII. HAÏR, *to hate.*

<i>Inf.</i> haïr, <i>to hate.</i>	<i>Ger.</i> haïssant, <i>hating.</i>	<i>Part.</i> haï, <i>hated.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Je haï -s,	s, t;	haïss -ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je haïss -ois,	ois, oit;	haïssions, iez, oient.
<i>Fut.</i> Je haï -rai,	ras, ra;	haï -ront, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je haï -rois,	rois, roit;	haï -rions, riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je haïss -e,	es, e;	haïss -ions, iez, ent.
Inscrire	<i>to inscribe,</i>	<i>ou écrire</i> 14.
Interdire	<i>to forbid,</i>	<i>ou dire</i> 13.

XVIII. LIRE, *to read.*

<i>Inf.</i> lire, <i>to read.</i>	<i>Ger.</i> lisant, <i>reading.</i>	<i>Par.</i> lu, <i>read.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Je l -is,	is, it;	lis -ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je lis -ois,	ois, oit;	lis -ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je l -us,	us, ut;	l -ûmes, ûtes, ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je li -rai,	ras, ra;	li -rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je li -rois,	rois, oit;	li -rions, riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je lis -e,	es, e,	lis -ions, iez, ent.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je	-usse,	usses,ût;	1	-ussions, ussiez, ussent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	1	-is,	ise;	1	lis-ons, ez, ent.	
	Maudire *		to curse,	on dire	13.	
	Médire		to slander,	on dire	13.	
	Mésoffrir		to underbid,	on offrir	23.	
	Se méprendre		to mistake,	on prendre	28.	

XIX. METTRE, to put.

<i>Inf.</i>	mettre, to put.	<i>Ger.</i>	mettant, putting.	<i>Part.</i>	mis, put.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je me	-ts, ts, t;	mett-ons, ez, ent.		
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mett-	ois, ois, oit;	mett-ions, iez, oient.		
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m	-is, is, it;	m -îmes, îtes, îrent.		
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mett-	rai, ras, ra;	mett-rons, rez, ront.		
<i>Cond.</i>	Je mett-	rois, rois, roit;	mett-rions, riez, roient.		
<i>S. P.</i>	Je mett-	e, es, e;	mett-ions, iez, ent.		
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m	-isse, isses, ît;	m -iffions, issiez, issent.		
<i>Imp.</i>	me	-ts, tte;	mett -ons, ez, ent.		

XX. MOUDRE, to grind.

<i>Inf.</i>	moudre, to grind.	<i>Ger.</i>	moulant, grinding.	<i>Part.</i>	moulu, ground.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je mou	-ds, ds, d;	moul-ons, ez, ent.		
<i>Imp.</i>	Je moul	-ois, ois, oit;	moul-ions, iez, oient.		
<i>Pret.</i>	Je moul	-us, us, ut;	moul-ûmes, ûtes, ûrent.		
<i>Fut.</i>	Je moud	-rai, ras, ra;	moud-rons, rez, ront.		
<i>Cond.</i>	Je moud	-rois, rois, roit;	moud-rions, riez, roient.		
<i>S. P.</i>	Je moul	-e, es, e;	moul-ions, iez, ent.		
<i>Pret.</i>	Je moul	usse, usses,ût;	moul-ussions, ussiez, ussent.		
<i>Imp.</i>	mou	-ds, le;	moul-ons, ez, ent.		

XXI. MOURIR, to die.

<i>Inf.</i>	mourir, to die.	<i>Ger.</i>	mourant, dying.	<i>Part.</i>	mort, dead.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je meu	-rs, rs, rt;	mour-ons, ez, meurent.		

* *Maudire* makes in the *Ger.* *maudissant*, in the *Imperf.* *je maudissois*, and *je maudisse* in the *Pres. & Pret. Subj.*

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mour -ois,	ois,	oit;	mour -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mour -us,	us,	ut;	mour -âmes,	âtes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mour -rai,	ras,	ra;	mour -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je mour -rois,	rois,	roit;	mour -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je meur -e,	es,	e;	mour -ions,	iez,	meurent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mour -usse,	usses,	ût;	mour -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>	meur	-s,	e;	mour -ons,	ez,	meurent.

XXII. NAITRE, to be born.

Inf. naître, to be born. *Ger.* naissant, being born. *Part.* né born.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je nai -s,	s,	t;	naiss -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je naiss -ois,	ois,	oit;	naiss -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je naqu -is,	is,	it;	naqu -îmes,	âtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je naît -rai,	ras,	ra;	naît -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je naît -rois,	rois,	roit;	naît -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je naiss -e,	es,	e;	naiss -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je naqu -isse,	isses,	ît;	naqu -issions,	issiez,	issent.

XXIII. OFFRIR, to offer.

Inf. offrir, to offer. *Ger.* offrant, offering. *Part.* offert, offered.

<i>Pres.</i>	J'offr -e,	es,	e;	offr -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'offr -ois,	ois,	oit;	offr -ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'offr -is,	is,	it;	offr -îmes,	âtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	J'offri -rai,	ras,	ra;	offri -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'offri -rois,	rois,	roit;	offri -rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	J'offr -e,	es,	e;	offr -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'offr -isse,	isses,	ît;	offr -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Offr	-es,	e;	offr -ons,	ez,	ent.

Omettre to omit, ou mettre 19.

Ouvrir to open, ou offrir 23.

XXIV PAÎTRE, *to graze.*

Inf. Paître, *to graze.* *Gerund.* paissant, *grazing,* *part. pu.* grazed.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je pai	-s,	s,	t;	paiss	-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je paiss	-ois,	ois,	oit;	paiss	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Fut.</i> Je paît	-rai,	ras,	ra;	paît	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je paît	-rois,	rois,	roit;	paît	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je païsse	-e,	es,	e;	paiss	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pai	-s,	se,	paiss	-ons,	ez,	ent.	

Parcourir, to run over, on courir. 10.

XXV PLAIRE, *to please.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je plai	-s,	s,	t;	plais	ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je plais	-ois,	ois,	oit;	plais	-ons,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pl	-us,	us,	ut;	pl	-ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je plai	-rai,	ras,	ra;	plai	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je plai	-rois,	rois,	roit;	plai	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je plais	-e,	es,	e;	plai	-sions,	fiez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pl	-usse,	usses,	ût	pl	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i> Plai	-s	se;	plais	-ons,	ez,	ent.	

Poursuivre, to pursue, on suivre. 34

XXVI POURVOIR *to provide.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je pourvoi	-s,	s,	t;	pourvo	-yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je pourvoy	-ois,	ois,	oit;	pourvoy	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pourv	-us,	us,	ut;	pourv	-ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je pourvoi	-rai,	ras,	ra;	pourvoi	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je pourvoi	-rois,	rois,	roit;	pourvoi	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je pourvoi	-e,	es,	e;	pourvo	-yions,	yez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pourvu	-sse,	usses,	ût;	pourv	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pourvoi	-s,	e,	pourvo	-yons,	yez,	ient.	

XXVII. POUVOIR, *to be able,*

<i>Pres.</i> Je peu	-x,	x,	t;	pouv	-ons,	ez,	peuvent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je pou	-vois,	ois,	oit;	pouv	-ions,	iez,	oient.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pret.</i> Je p	ous,	us,	ut;	p	-ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je pou	-rai,	ras,	ra;	pou	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je pou	-rois,	rois,	roit;	pou	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je puis	-e,	es,	e;	puis	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je p	-usse,	usses,	ût;	p	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

Prédire, *to foretell, on dire* 13

XXVIII. PRENDRE *to take.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je pren	-ds,	ds,	d;	pren	-ons,	ez,	nent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je pren	-ois,	ois,	oit;	pren	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pr	-is,	is,	it;	pr	-îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je prend	-rai,	ras,	ra;	prend	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je prend	-rois,	rois,	roit;	prend	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S.P.</i> Je prenn	-e,	es,	e;	prenn	-ions,	iez,	nent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je pr	-isse,	isses,	ît;	pr	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pren	-ds,	ne;		pren	-ons,	ez,	nent.

Prescrire, *to prescribe, on écrire* 14.

Prévaloir, *to prevail, on valoir.*

XXIX PREVOIR, *to foresee.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je prévoi	-s,	s,	t;	prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je prévoi	-ois,	ois,	oit;	prévoy	-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je prév	-is,	is,	it;	prév	-îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je prévoi	-rai,	ras,	ra;	prévoi	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je prévoi	-rois,	rois,	roit;	prévoi	-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S.P.</i> Je prévoi	-e,	es,	e;	prévo	-yions,	yez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je prév	-isse,	isses,	ît;	prév	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i> Prévoi	-s,	e;		prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.

Promettre *to promise, on mettre* 19.

Proscrire *to proscribe, on écrire* 14.

Rapprendre *to learn again, on prendre* 28.

Reconquérir *to reconquer, on acquérir* 2.

Recoudre *to sew again, on coudre* 9.

Recourir *to have recourse, on courir* 10.

Recouvrir *to new cover, on offrir.* 23.

Récrire *to write over, on écrire* 14.

Recueillir *to gather, on cueillir* 12.

Redire	<i>to say again, on dire</i>	13.
Relire	<i>to read over, on lire</i>	18.
Remettre	<i>to put again, on mettre</i>	19.
Remoudre	<i>to grind again, on moudre</i>	20.
Renaitre	<i>to be born again, on naître</i>	22.
Renvoyer	<i>to send back, on renvoyer</i>	15.
Reprendre	<i>to take again, on prendre</i>	28.
Requérir	<i>to require, on acquérir</i>	2.

XXX. RESOUDRE *to resolve.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je résou	-ds	ds	d;		résolv	-ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je résol	-ois,	ois,	oit;		résolv	-ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je résol	-us,	us,	ut;		résol	-ûmes,	ûtes, ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je résoud	-rai,	ras,	ra;		résoud	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je résoud	-rois,	rois,	roit;		résoud	-rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je résol	-e,	es,	e;		résolv	-ions,	iez, ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je résol	-usse,	ussés,	ût;		résol	-ussions,	ussiez, ussent.
<i>Imp.</i> Résol	-uds,	lve:			résol	-vons,	ez, ent.

XXXI REVÊTRE *to invest.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je revê	-ts,	ts,	t;		revêt	-ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je revêt	-ois,	ois,	oit;		revêt	-ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je revêt	-is,	is,	it;		revêt	-îmes,	îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je revêti	-rai,	ras,	ra;		revêti	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je revêti	-rois,	rois,	roit;		revêti	-rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je revêt	-e,	es,	e;		revêt	-ions,	iez, ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je revêt	-isse,	isses,	ît;		revêt	-issions,	issiez, issent.
<i>Imp.</i> revêt		s,	e;		revêt	-ons,	ez, ent.

Revivre *to revive, on vivre.* 38.Revoir *to see again, on voir.* 39.XXXII RIRE *to laugh.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je r	-is,	is,	it;		ri	-ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je ri	-ois,	ois,	oit;		ri	-ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je r	-is,	is,	it;		r	-îmes,	îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je ri	-rai,	ras,	ra,		ri	-rons,	rez, ront.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
Cond.	Je ri	-rois, rois, roît;		ri	-rions, riez, roient.	
S.P.	Je ri	-e, es, e;		ri	-ions, iez, ent.	
Pret.	Je r	-isse, issés, ît;		r	-issions, issiez, issent.	
Imp.	R	-is, ie;		ri	-ons, ez, ent.	

Rouvrir to open again, on offrir. 23.

XXXIII. SAVOIR to know.

Pres.	Je sai	-s, s, t;	sav	-ons, ez, ent.	
Imp.	Je sav	-ois, ois, oit;	sav	-ions, iez, oient.	
Pret.	Je f	-us, us, ut;	f	ûmes, fûtes, ûrent.	
Fut.	Je sau	-rai, ras, ra;	sau	-rons, rez, ront.	
Cond.	Je sau	-rois, rois, roît;	sau	-rions, riez, roient.	
S.P.	Je f	-usse, usses, ût;	f	ussions, ussiez, ussent.	
Imp.	Sach	-e, e;	fach	-ons, ez, ent.	
	Secourir	to relieve,	on	courir	10.
	S'enquérir	to inquire,	on	acquérir	2.
	S'ensuivre	to follow,	on	suivre	34.
	Souffrir	to suffer,	on	offrir	23.
	Soumettre	to submit,	on	mettre	19.
	Souscrire	to subscribe,	on	écrire	14.
	Sourire	to smile,	on	rire	32.
	Soustraire	to subtract,	on	traire	35.

XXXIV. SUIVRE, to follow.

Inf. suivre, to follow. Ger. suivant, following. Part. suivi, followed.

Pres.	Je sui	-s, s, t;	sui	-vons, ez, ent.	
Imp.	Je suiv	-ois, ois, oit;	sui	-vions, iez, oient.	
Pret.	Je suiv	-is, is, it;	sui	-vîmes, îtes, îrent.	
Fut.	Je suiv	-rai, ras, ra;	sui	-vrons, rez, ront.	
Cond.	Je suiv	-fois, rois, roît;	sui	-vrions, riez, roient.	
S. P.	Je suiv	-e, es, e;	sui	-vions, iez, ent.	
Pret.	Je suiv	-isse, issés, ît;	sui	-vissions, issiez, issent.	
Imp.	Sui	-s, ve;	sui	-vons, ez, ent.	
	Surprendre	to surprise,	on	prendre	28.
	Survivre	to out live,	on	vivre	38.
	Taire	to conceal,	on	plaire	25.

XXXV. TRAIRE, *to milk*.

Inf. traire, *to milk*. *Ger.* trayant, *milking*. *Part.* traît, *milked*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je trai	-s,	s,	t;	tra -yons,	yez, ient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je tray	-ois,	ois,	oit;	tray -ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je trai	-rai,	ras,	ra;	trai -rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je trai	-rois,	rois,	roit;	trai -rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je tray	-e,	es,	e;	tra -yions,	iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Tra	-is,	ye;	tra -yons,	yez, ient.	

Transcrire *to transcribe*, on écrire 14.

Transmettre *to transmit*, on mettre 19.

Trevaillir *to start*, on cueillir 12.

XXXVI. VAINCRE, *to vanquish*.

Inf. vaincre, *to vanquish*. *Ger.* vainquant, *vanquishing*. *Part.* vaincu, *vanquished*.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je vain	-cs,	cs,	c,	vainqu -ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je vainqu	-ois,	ois,	oit;	vainqu -ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vainqu	-is,	is,	it;	vainqu -îmes,	îtes, îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je vainc	-rai,	ras,	ra;	vainc -rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je vainc	-rois,	rois,	roit;	vainc -rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je vainqu	-e,	es,	e;	vainqu -ions,	iez, ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vainqu	-isse,	isse,	ît;	vainqu -issions,	issiez, issent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vain	cs,	que;	vainqu -ons,	ez, ent.	

XXXVII. VALOIR, *to be worth*.

Inf. valoir, *to be worth*. *Ger.* valant, *being worth*. *Part.* valu, *been worth*.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je vau	-x,	x,	t;	val -ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je val	-ois,	ois,	oit;	val -ions,	iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je val	-us,	us,	ut;	val -ûmes,	ûtes, ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je vaud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	vaud -rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je vaud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	vaud -rions,	riez, roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je vaill	-e,	es,	e;	val -ions,	iez, vaillent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je val	-usse,	usses,	ût;	val -ussions,	ussiez, ussent.

XXXVIII. VIVRE, *to live.*

Inf. vivre, *to live.* *Ger.* vivant, *living,* *Part.* vécu, *lived.*

	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je v -is;	is,	it;		viv-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je viv -ois,	ois,	oit;		viv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je véc -us,	us,	ut;		vec-ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je viv -rai,	ras,	ra;		viv-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je viv -rois,	rois,	roit;		viv-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je viv -e,	es,	e;		viv-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je vec -usse,	usses,	ût;		vec-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>		vis,	vive;		vivons,	vivez,	vivent.

XXXIX. VOIR, *to see.*

Inf. voir, *to see.* *Ger.* voyant, *seeing.* *Part.* vu, *seen.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je voi -s,	s,	t;		voy-ons,	ez,	voient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voy -ois,	ois,	oit;		voy-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je v -is,	is,	it;		v -îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je ver -rai,	ras,	ra;		ver-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je ver -rois,	rois,	roit;		ver-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je voi -e,	es,	e;		vo-yions,	yez,	voient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je v -isse,	isses,	ît;		v -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imp.</i>		Vois,	voie;		vo-yons,	yez,	voient.

XL. VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

Inf. vouloir, *to be willing.* *Ger.* voulant, *being willing.*
Part. voulu, *been willing.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je veu -x,	x,	t;		voul-ons,	ez,	veulent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voul -ois,	ois,	oit;		voul-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je voul -us,	us,	ut;		voul-ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je voud -rai,	ras,	ra;		voud-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je voud -rois,	rois,	roit;		voud-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je veuill -e,	es,	e;		voul-ions,	iez,	veuillent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je voul -usse,	usses,	ût;		voul-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imp.</i>		Veux,	veuille;		voul-ons,	ez,	veuillent.

The following are of good use only in the tenses and persons here after mentioned.

Inf. bruire to rustle. *Ger.* bruyant. *Imp.* il bruvoit, ils bruvoient.

Inf. braire to bray like an ass. *Pres.* il brait, ils braient.

Inf. échoir to happen. *Part.* échu happened. *Pres.* il échet it happens. *Fut.* il échera it will happen.

Inf. déchoir to decay. *Part.* déchu decayed.

Inf. clorre to close. *Part.* clos. *Pres. ind.* Je clos, tu clos, il clot. *Fut.* Je clorrai, tu clorras, il clorra. *Cond.* Je clorrois, tu clorrois, il clorroit.

Inf. enclorre to inclose is conjugated like clorre.

Inf. éclore to be hatched. *Part.* éclos. *Pres. ind.* il éclot, ils éclosent. *Fut.* il éclogra, ils éclogront. *Cond.* il éclorroit, ils éclorroient. *Pres. subj.* qu'il éclosse, qu'ils éclosent.

inf. frire to fry. *Part.* frit. *Pres. ind.* Je fris, tu fris, il frit.

Fut. Je firai, tu firas, il fira, nous firons, vous frirez, ils firont. *Cond.* Je fri-rois, rois, roit, fri-rions, riez, roient.

In others tenses we make use of the verb *faire* and of the infinitive *frire*, as *Je sefois frire, tu sefois frire* &c.

Inf. mouvoir, émouvoir to move, promouvoir to promote, make in the participle mu, ému, promu.

Inf. ouir to hear. *Part.* oui heard. The participle is often followed by *dire* as, *J'ai oui dire*.

Inf. querir to fetch is used in the infinitive, only after the verbs *aller, envoyer* & *venir*.

Inf. rasseoir to settle. *Part.* rassis. *Surseoir* to adjourn. *Part.* sursis.

Pres. ind. il sied, ils sieent. *Imp.* il sieoit, ils sieoient. *Fut.* il siera, ils sieront. *Cond.* il sieroit, ils sieroient.

Inf. vêtir to cloath. *Part.* vêtu cloathed.

SECTION THE EIGHT.

*Conjugation of the impersonal verbs.*NEIGER *to snow.**Inf.* neiger, *ger.* neigeant, *part.* neigé, avoir neigé, ayant neigé.*Pres. ind.* il neige, *imp.* il neigeoit, *pret.* il neigea, *fut.* il neigera, *cond.* il neigerait, *pres. subj.* il neige, *pret.* il neigeât, *comp. tenses* il a neigé, il avoit neigé &c.*Geler to freeze, éclairer to lighten, tonner to thunder, grêler to hail,* are conjugated on neiger.PLEUVOIR *to rain:**Inf.* pleuvoir, *ger.* pleuvant, *part.* plu, *comp.* avoir plu, ayant plu.*Pres. ind.* il pleut, *imp.* il pleuvoit, *pret.* il plut, *fut.* il pleuvra, *cond.* il pleuvrait, *pres. subj.* il pleuve, *pret.* il plût, *comp. tenses*, il a plu, il avoit plu &c.FALLOIR *to be necessary.**Inf.* falloir, *part.* fallu, *comp.* avoir fallu, ayant fallu.*Pres. ind.* il faut, *imp.* il falloit, *pret.* il fallut, *fut.* il faudrait, *cond.* il faudroit, *pres. subj.* il faille, *pret.* il fallût, *comp. tenses* il a fallu, il avoit fallu &c.Y AVOIR *to be there.**Inf.* y avoir, y ayant, y avoir eu, y ayant eu.*Pres. ind.* il y a, *there is*, *imp.* il y avoit, *there was*, *pret.* il y eut, *there was*, *fut.* il y aura *there shall be*, *cond.* il y aurait *there would be*, *pres. subj.* il y ait *there may be*, *pret.* il y eût *there might be*, *comp. tenses* il y a eu *there has been*, il y aurait eu *there had been* &c.

A NEW METHOD TO LEARN EASILY ALL VERBS REGULAR AND IRREGULAR.

This method is divided in two sections ; the first teaches how to form the tenses of a verb, and the second how to form the persons of a tense.

§. I. Rules for the formation of the tenses of verbs.

The *Pres. inf.* the *Gerund*, the *Part.* the *Pres.* & *Pret. Indic.* are called the primitive tenses, because all others are formed from them according to the following rules. These tenses must be learned by heart in the preceding conjug.

Rule I. The imperfect is formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ois*, as *parlant*, *croyant*, gerund, *je parlois*, *je croyois*, imperfect.

Rule II. The future is formed from the *pres. inf.* by adding *ai* to the final of those which end with a consonant, as *donner*, *dormir*, *inf. je donnerai*, *je dormirai*, fut. and by changing the final *e* into *ai* for those which end with a vowel, as *lire*, *vendre*, *inf. je lirai*, *je vendrai*, fut.

Rule III. The conditional is also formed from the *pres. inf.* by adding *ois* to the final of those which end with a consonant, as *chanter*, *punir*, *inf. je chanterois*, *je punirois*, cond. and by changing *e* mute into *ois* for those which end with a vowel, as *aimer*, *partir*, *inf. j'aimerois*, *je partirois*, cond.

Rule IV. The *pres. subj.* is formed from the ger. by changing the final *ant* into *e* mute and *yant* into *ie*, as *servant*, *croyant*, ger. *je sers*, *je crois*, *pres. subj.*

Rule V. The *pret. subj.* is formed from the *pret. ind.* by changing the final *ai* into *asse* for the verbs of the first conjugation, as *je donnai*, *j'aimai*, *pret. ind. je donnasse*, *j'aimasse*, *pret. subj.* and by adding *se* to all those which end in *s*, as

j'agis, je lus, je tins, pret. ind. j'agisse, je lusse, je tinsse pret. subj.

Exceptions.

The exceptions to rule the second are, verbs of the fourth, fifth and sixth conjugations, which make in the future, *je tiendrai, je recevrai, je ferai*, and also the following irregulars, *avoir, être, acquérir, s'asseoir, courir, cueillir, envoyer, falloir, mourir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, savoir, valoir, vouloir*, and those conjugated upon them, which make in the future, *j'aurai, je serai, j'acquerrai, je m'assiérai, je courrai, je cueillerai, j'envverrai, il faudra, je mourrai, il pleuvra, je pourrai, je saurai, je vaudrai, je voudrai; voir* makes *je verrai*.

The exceptions to rule the third are the verbs mentioned before, which form their conditional from the future, by changing *rai* into *rois*, as *je tiendrai, je recevrai, je ferai, fut. je tiendrois, je recevrais, je ferois, cond.*

The exceptions to rule the fourth are, verbs of the fourth, fifth and sixth regular conjugations, which make, *je tiens, je reçois, je fais*, in the pres. subj. and also the following irregulars, *aller, boire, être, falloir, mourir, pouvoir, prendre, valoir, vouloir*, and those conjugated upon them, which make in the pres. subj. *j'aie, je boive, je sois, il faille. je meure, je puisse, je prenne, je vaille, je veuille*.

§ II Rule for the formation of Persons.

RULE I. Pres. Ind.

The first person ends either in *e, s, or x*. When it ends in *e*, the second adds an *s*, and the third is like the first as, *je parle, tu parles, il parle*.

When it ends in *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third changes the final *s* or *x* into *t* as, *je lis, tu lis, il lit; je veux, tu veux, il veut*.

However *s* is left out in the third person of verbs which end in *cs, ds, or ts* in the first as, *je crains. tu crains, il crainc; je perds, tu perds, il perd; je mets, tu mets, il met*.

The three persons plural are formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ons, ez, ent, and yant* into *yons, yez,*

ant as, *parlant*, *croquant*, ger. *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*: *nous croyons*, *vous croyez*, *ils croient* pl. of the pres. of the indicative.

The exceptions are,

1° The verb *aller* which makes *je vais*, *tu vas*, *il va*; *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*.

2° *être* which makes, *je suis*, *tu es*, *il est*, *nous sommes*, *vous êtes*, *ils sont*.

3° *Savoir* which makes *nous, savons*, *vous savez*, *ils savent*.

4° *Faire* and its compounds which makes *vous faites*. *ils font*.

5° *dire* and *redire* which makes *vous dites* and *vous redites*.

6° The verbs *avoir*, *boire*, *mourir*, *pouvoir*, *prendre*, *recevoir*, *tenir*, *vouloir* and those conjugated upon them, which make in the third person plural, *ils ont*, *ils boivent*, *ils meurent*, *ils peuvent*, *ils prennent*, *ils reçoivent*, *ils tiennent*, *ils veulent*.

Rule 2 pl. of the sub. pres.

The first and second persons of the pres. of the subj. are formed from the ger. by changing the final *ant* into *ions* for the first person, and *iez* for the second as, *parlant*, *disant* ger. *nous parlions*, *vous parliez*, *nous disions*, *vous disiez* plu. sub.

The verb *être* is excepted and makes, *nous soyons*, *vous soyez*, *ils soient*, and the verb *faire* which makes, *nous fassions*, *vous fassiez*, *ils fassent*.

Rule 3 imperat.

The third persons of the imperative are invariably like the third of the pres. of the subj. and others persons are like the same of the pres. of the indicat. except the verbs of the first conjugation which have no *s* for final in the second person of the imperative, and also the verbs *aller*, *avoir*, *être*, *savoir* and *vouloir* which have all the persons of the imperat. like those of the subj. pres.

Rule 4.

The persons of other tenses are formed from the first, by changing the final as follows

IMPERFECT OF THE INDIC.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1	2	3	1	2	3
ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
PRETEREIT OF THE INDIC.					
{	as,	a;	âmes,	âtes	érent.
	ins,	int;	înmes,	întes,	înrent.
	is,	is;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
FUTURE.					
rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
CONDITIONAL.					
rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.					
e,	es,	e;	 ent.		
PRETERITE OF THE SUBJ.					
{	asse,	ât	assions,	assiez,	assent.
	infle,	înt;	inssions	inssiez,	inssent.
	ifle,	ît;	iffions,	iffiez,	iffent.
	usse,	ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

OF ADVERBS.

The word Adverb signifies joined to a Verb.

The Adverb expresses some circumstances of an adjective, of a verb, of a participle, or even of another adverb, to which it has reference. exam.

Dieu est infiniment juste. Il punira severement les impies.

God is infinitely just. He will punish severely the impious.

Most of the french adjectives, become adverbs by altering their final according to the three following rules.

Rule I.

Adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* become adverbs by changing the final *ant* into *amment* & *ent* into *emment* as, *constant*, *prudent*, *patient*, adj. *Constamment*, *prudemment*, *patiemment*, adv.

Rule II.

Adjectives which end in a vowel become adverbs by adding *ment* to the final as, *sage*, *poli*, *ingenu* adj. *sagement*, *poliment*, *ingenument* adv.

Rule III.

Adjectives which end neither in a vowel nor in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine singular; become adverbs by adding *ment*, to their feminine termination as, *grand*, *doux*, *heureux*, adj. m. *grande*, *douce*, *heureuse*, adj. f. *grandement*, *doucement*, *heureusement* adv. *

The *e* which precedes *ment* is mute in all adverbs formed from adjectives, except in the following in which it takes an acute accent; *aisément*, *aveuglement*, *commodément*, *communément*, *conformément*, *délibérément*, *démésurément*, *désordonnement*, *désespérément*, *déterminément*, *effrontément*, *énormément*, *expressément*, *figurément*, *impunément*, *incommodément*, *inconsidérément*, *indéterminément*, *inopinément*, *modérément*, *nommément*, *obscurément*, *obstinément*, *opiniâtrément*, *passionément*, *posément*, *précisément*, *prématurément*, *privément*, *profondément*, *profusément*, *proportionément*, *sensément*, *séparément*.

DIFFERENT SORTS OF ADVERBS.

Besides the prodigious number of adverbs, formed from adjectives according to the three preceding rules; there are many others which can be divided into nine classes, according to their signification, they are called as follows.

1°. ADVERBS OF ORDER as, *premierement* first, *secondement*, secondly, *troisiement* thirdly &c. *Devant* before, *derrière* behind, *après* after, *ensuite* afterwards &c.

* See how to form the feminine of adjectives pag. 39. & 40.

2°. ADVERBS OF PLACE as, *ou* where, *d'ou* from whence, *ici* here, *là* there, *dedans* within, *dehors* without, *en haut* above, *en bas* below, *loin* far, *près* near, &c.

3°. ADVERBS OF TIME as, *à présent* now, *aujourd'hui* to day, *hier* yesterday, *autrefois* formerly, *bientôt* soon, *dans peu* shortly, *deformais* hereafter &c.

4°. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY as, *combien* how much, *beaucoup* much, *peu* little, *assez* enough, *tant* so much, *autant* as much, *trop* too much, *trop peu* too little &c.

5°. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON as, *comme* as, *de même* in the same manner, *aussi* as, *autant* as much, *plus* more, *moins* less, *pareillement* likewise &c.

6°. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION as, *oui* yes, *à la vérité* indeed, *vraiment* truly, *sans* without doubt, *assurément* assuredly, *certainement* certainly &c.

7°. ADVERBS OF NEGATION as, *non* no, *ne pas* not, *point du tout* not at all, *nullement* by no means &c.

8°. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION as, *quand* when, *pourquoi* why, *combien* how much, *comment* how, *où* where &c.

9°. ADVERBS OF DOUBT as, *peut-être* perhaps, *probablement* very likely &c.

OF PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are so called from the latin verb *preponere* (which signifies placed before) because they are always put before the verb they govern, exam. *ce qui se fait dans la passion, se fait souvent contre la raison, & nous donne dans la suite de grands sujets de repentirs.*

Prepositions are indeclinable. They serve to denote the several relations of nouns, pronouns, or adverbs with one another they are the following.

à cause de	on account of.	à la réserve de	excepting that.
à côté de	by.	à l'égard de	with regard to.
à couvert de	secure from.	à l'exception de	excepted.
à fleur de	even with.	à l'exclusion de	excepting.
à force de	by dint of.	à l'insçu de	unknown to.
à l'abri de	sheltered from.	à l'opposite de	over against.
à la faveur de	by means of.	à moins de	under.
à la manière de	after the fashion	à raison de	at the rate of

à rebours de,	<i>contrary to.</i>	au tour de,	<i>around.</i>
au deça de,	<i>on this side.</i>	au travers de,	<i>through.</i>
au dedans de	<i>within.</i>	aux environs de,	<i>round about.</i>
au dehors de,	<i>without.</i>	aux dépens de,	<i>at the expense of.</i>
au delà de,	<i>on that side.</i>	en deça de,	<i>on this side.</i>
au derrière de,	<i>behind.</i>	en dépit de,	<i>in spite of.</i>
au dessous de,	<i>under.</i>	en présence de,	<i>in presence of.</i>
au dessus de,	<i>upon.</i>	en suite de,	<i>after.</i>
au devant de,	<i>before.</i>	faute de,	<i>for want of.</i>
au lieu de,	<i>instead.</i>	hors de,	<i>out of.</i>
au milieu de,	<i>in the middle of.</i>	le long de,	<i>a long.</i>
au moyen de,	<i>by means of.</i>	loin de,	<i>far from.</i>
au niveau de,	<i>even to.</i>	pour l'amour de,	<i>for the sake of.</i>
au peril de,	<i>at the peril of.</i>	près de,	<i>near.</i>
auprès de,	<i>near.</i>	proche de,	<i>nigh,</i>
au prix de,	<i>at the expence of.</i>	tout auprès de,	<i>close to.</i>
au risque de,	<i>at the danger of.</i>	vis à vis de,	<i>opposite to.</i>

2° *Prepositions which govern the accusative case.*

après,	<i>after.</i>	malgré,	<i>in spite of.</i>
à travers,	<i>through.</i>	moyennant,	<i>for.</i>
avant,	<i>before.</i>	non obstant,	<i>notwithstanding.</i>
avec,	<i>with.</i>	outre,	<i>besides.</i>
chez,	<i>at.</i>	par,	<i>by.</i>
contre,	<i>against.</i>	parmi,	<i>among.</i>
dans,	<i>in.</i>	pendant,	<i>during.</i>
depuis,	<i>since.</i>	pour,	<i>for.</i>
derrière,	<i>behind.</i>	proche,	<i>near.</i>
dès,	<i>from.</i>	sans,	<i>without.</i>
devant,	<i>before.</i>	sauf,	<i>safe.</i>
durant,	<i>during.</i>	selon,	<i>according to,</i>
en,	<i>in.</i>	sous,	<i>under.</i>
entre,	<i>between.</i>	suivant,	<i>according.</i>
envers,	<i>towards.</i>	sur,	<i>upon.</i>
environ,	<i>about.</i>	touchant,	<i>concerning.</i>
excepté,	<i>except.</i>	vers,	<i>towards.</i>
hormis,	<i>except, but.</i>		

Observe that the prepositions preceded in french by *à, au,* or *aux* govern the genitive case, and that most of others require the accusative after them.

These four *conformement* according to, *jusqu'à* as far as, *par rapport à* with respect to, *quant à* as for, govern the dative case.

3° *Prepositions joined to a Verb.*

Many prepositions come in english after a verb and make a part of its signification; such are the following which are not expressed in french.

abattre,	to pull down.	ôter,	to take away.
abandonner,	to give up.	paraphraser,	to comment upon.
cacheter,	to seal up.	ramener,	to bring back.
combler,	to fill up.	trouver,	to find out.
déchirer,	to tear of.	monter,	to go up.
déraciner,	to root out.	descendre,	to go down.
s'envoler,	to fly away.	entrer,	to come in.
époudrer,	to wipe off.	sortir,	to go out.
s'évanouir,	to faint away.	regarder,	to look at.
expulser,	to turn out.	chercher,	to look for.
extirper,	to root out.	admirer,	to wonder at.
se lever,	to get up.	attendre,	to wait for.
mander,	to send for.		

The English give to the most part of their verbs a signification quite opposite to their primitive one, by prefixing to them the preposition *un* or *dis*. The French do the same, prefixing *dé* to the verbs which begin with a vowel or an *h* mute, as you may observe in the following.

{ border,	to border.	{ paver,	to pave.
{ déborder,	to unborder.	{ dépaver,	to unpave.
{ charger,	to load.	{ apprendre,	to learn.
{ décharger,	to unload.	{ désapprendre,	to unlearn.
{ faire,	to do.	{ habiller,	to dress.
{ défaire,	to undo.	{ déshabiller,	to undress.
{ friser,	to curl.	{ tromper,	to deceive.
{ défriser,	to uncurl.	{ détromper,	to undeceive.
{ lacer,	to lace.	{ voiler,	to veil.
{ délacer,	to unlace.	{ dévoiler,	to unveil.
{ lier,	to tie.	{ tordre,	to twist.
{ délier,	to untie.	{ détordre,	to untwist.

{ conter,	<i>to count.</i>	{ approuver,	<i>to approve.</i>
{ déconter,	<i>to discount.</i>	{ désapprouver,	<i>to disapprove.</i>
{ se fier,	<i>to trust.</i>	{ armer,	<i>to arm.</i>
{ se défier,	<i>to distrust.</i>	{ déarmer,	<i>to disarm.</i>
{ couvrir,	<i>to cover.</i>	{ honorer,	<i>to honour.</i>
{ découvrir,	<i>to discover.</i>	{ déshonorer,	<i>to dishonour.</i>
{ plaire,	<i>to please.</i>	{ obéir,	<i>to obey.</i>
{ déplaire,	<i>to displease.</i>	{ désobéir,	<i>to disobey.</i>
{ posséder,	<i>to possess.</i>	{ unir,	<i>to unite.</i>
{ déposséder,	<i>to dispossess.</i>	{ désunir,	<i>to disunite. &c.</i>

The English put the word *again* after a verb to express the reiteration of a thing. The French expresses the reiteration by prefixing the preposition *re* to the verb, when it begins with a consonant, and *r* only when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute. Thus we say

{ appeller,	<i>to call.</i>	paraître,	<i>to appear.</i>
{ rappeller,	<i>to call again.</i>	reparaître,	<i>to appear &c.</i>
{ cacheter,	<i>to seal up.</i>	plisser,	<i>to plait.</i>
{ recacheter,	<i>to seal up again.</i>	replisser,	<i>to plait again.</i>
{ composer,	<i>to compose.</i>	prendre,	<i>to take.</i>
{ recomposer,	<i>to compose &c.</i>	repandre,	<i>to take again.</i>
{ demander,	<i>to ask.</i>	tomber,	<i>to fall.</i>
{ redemander,	<i>to ask again.</i>	retomber,	<i>to fall again.</i>
{ faire,	<i>to do.</i>	trouver,	<i>to find.</i>
{ refaire,	<i>to do again.</i>	retrouver,	<i>to find again.</i>
{ embarquer,	<i>to embark,</i>	vendre,	<i>to sell.</i>
{ rembarquer,	<i>to embark &c.</i>	revendre,	<i>to sell again.</i>
{ mesurer,	<i>to measure.</i>	venir,	<i>to come.</i>
{ remesurer,	<i>to measure &c.</i>	revenir,	<i>to come again.</i>
{ lire,	<i>to read.</i>		
{ relire,	<i>to read again.</i>		

There are many other prepositions which come immediately after a verb in english and change its signification; such are *away, back, upon, out, for, with, off* &c. but these cannot be reduced to rules, and can be learned by practice only.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are words indeclinable used in a sentence to join together the different parts of speech. Examp.

Parlez peu et pensez bien, si vous voulez qu'on vous regarde comme un homme d'esprit.

Speak little *and* think much, *if* you will be looked upon, as a man of sense.

In this sentence *et*, *si* & *comme* are three conjunctions which shew the dependency and conjunction of words which compose it.

Conjunctions are simple or compound; the simple consist of one word as *et*, *ou*, *aussi*, *ni* &c. the compound are formed of two or more words, such as *afin que*, *au lieu que*, *si ce n'est que*. Both simple and compound can be divided into ten species called,

- 1°. Copulative, as *et* and, *comme* as, *de sorte que* so that &c.
- 2°. Disjunctive, as *ou* or, *ou bien* else, *ni* neither, &c.
- 3°. Adversative, as *néanmoins* nevertheless, &c.
- 4°. Conditional, as *si* if, *pourvu que* provided, &c.
- 5°. Concessive, as *d'accord* granted, *en effet* really &c.
- 6°. Comparative, as *aussi bien que* as well as, &c.
- 7°. Causal, as *parceque* because, &c.
- 8°. Interrogative, as *pourquoi* why, *quand* when &c.
- 9°. Continuative, as *de plus* moreover, *encore* yet &c.
- 10°. Concluding, as *donc* therefore, *ainsi* thus &c.

The above explanation being too abstract for many young students, I will dispose the conjunctions in three alphabetical series. *The first* contains the conjunctions which govern the infinitive mood; *the second* enumerates those which govern the subjunctive, and *the third* comprehends all others.

1°. Conjunctions which govern the infinitive.

Afin de,	in order to.	de peur de,	for fear of.
a moins de,	unless.	faute de,	for want of.
avant de,	before.	jusqu'à,	till.
aulieu de,	instead of.	plutôt que de,	rather than.
loin de,	far from.	poor,	for.
de crainte de,	for fear of.	sans,	without.

2°, *Conjunction which govern the subjunctive.*

Afin que,	<i>that.</i>	malgré que,	<i>for all that.</i>
à moins que,	<i>unless.</i>	non obstant que,	<i>for all that.</i>
avant que,	<i>before.</i>	non pas que,	<i>not that.</i>
au cas que,	<i>in case that.</i>	posé que,	<i>suppose that.</i>
bien que,	<i>though.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided.</i>
de crainte que,	<i>for fear.</i>	quoique,	<i>though.</i>
de peur que,	<i>lest.</i>	sans que,	<i>without.</i>
en cas que,	<i>if.</i>	soit que,	<i>whether.</i>
encore que,	<i>though.</i>	supposé que,	<i>suppose that.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till.</i>	Dieu veuille que,	<i>God grant.</i>
loin que,	<i>far from.</i>	pourque,	<i>that.</i>

3°. *Conjunctions which govern neither the inf. nor the subj.*

A cause que,	<i>because.</i>	durant que,	<i>during.</i>
à condition que,	<i>provided.</i>	et,	<i>and.</i>
ainsi,	<i>thus.</i>	en effet,	<i>indeed.</i>
ainsi que,	<i>as.</i>	enfin,	<i>in short.</i>
à la vérité,	<i>indeed.</i>	ensuite,	<i>afterwards.</i>
après que,	<i>after.</i>	joint à cela,	<i>moreover.</i>
au lieu que,	<i>whereas.</i>	lorsque,	<i>when.</i>
au moins,	<i>at least.</i>	mais,	<i>but.</i>
aussi,	<i>also.</i>	même,	<i>even.</i>
aussi bien que,	<i>as well as.</i>	néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>
aussitôt que,	<i>as soon as.</i>	ni,	<i>nor.</i>
au surplus,	<i>moreover.</i>	non plus,	<i>neither.</i>
autant que,	<i>as much.</i>	non seulement,	<i>not only.</i>
car,	<i>for.</i>	ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>
cependant,	<i>however.</i>	ou,	<i>or.</i>
c'est pourquoi,	<i>therefore.</i>	outre,	<i>besides.</i>
comme,	<i>as.</i>	outre cela,	<i>add to that.</i>
d'abord que,	<i>as soon as.</i>	parceque,	<i>because.</i>
d'ailleurs.	<i>besides.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while.</i>
d'autant que,	<i>whereas.</i>	pour lors,	<i>then.</i>
de façon que,	<i>so that.</i>	pourquoi,	<i>why.</i>
de puis que,	<i>since.</i>	pourtant,	<i>however.</i>
de plus,	<i>moreover.</i>	puis,	<i>then.</i>
de sorte que,	<i>so that.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
dès que,	<i>as soon as.</i>	quand,	<i>when.</i>
donc,	<i>then.</i>	quand même,	<i>although.</i>

selon que,	according as.	sur quoi,	where upon.
si,	if.	sur-tout,	especially.
si bien que,	so that.	tandis que,	whilst.
si ce n'est que,	except that.	tant que,	as long as.
sinon,	else.	toutefois.	however.
sitôt que,	as soon as.	volontiers,	willingly.
suivant que,	according as.		

OBSERVE that many adverbs become prepositions when they govern a noun, a pronoun or a verb, as *marchez devant*, adv. *marchez devant moi*, prep. Some prepositions in their turn become conjunctions, when they are used to join different parts of speech. as *suites cela pour moi*, prep. *je le ferai pour vous plaire*, conjunction.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are some indeclinable words used in a sentence to express the affections of the mind, either of joy, grief, fear, aversion, derision, surprise, &c.

1°. Of joy, as	bon well! vive la joie huzza!
2°. of grief, as	helas alas! ah bab! &c.
3°. of fear, as	ah ah! hélas alas! he oh! &c.
4°. of aversion, as	fi fye upon! fi donc fye upon!
5°. of derision, as	oh oh! zett psbarw!
6°. of surprise, as	bon Dieu good God! eh lack a day!
7°. of encouraging, as	allons come on! courage cheer up!
8°. to stop, as	holà hold! tout beau softly! &c.





PART III.

OF SYNTAX. *

SYNTAX is the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

Construction supposes three things in every tongue; the union of words, their *concord* & their *disposition*; these objects are fully explained in the following rules which point out the different genius of each language with accuracy and precision.

Syntax is divided into 24 chapters, and chapters are divided into sections when occasion requires it.

* *The learner must not begin the second chapter of the syntax, till he understands the rules of the first, nor the third, before he knows the second; and so on for all others. It is also proper he should repeat at least once a week, the principal rules which he has already learnt, lest he should forget them.*

CHAPTER I.

USE OF THE FRENCH ARTICLES.

This chapter is divided into four sections. *The first* explains the several circumstances in which articles are used in both languages. *The second* enumerates the cases in which the article is used in french and not in english; *the third* describes those when on the contrary it is used in english and not in french, & *the fourth* contains all the circumstances in which both languages take no article.

* *See the french articles pag. 24, and the declension of nouns with them pag. 26. The division of articles definite, indefinite & partitive is generally adopted by the best Grammarians.*

SECTION THE FIRST.

ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH AND IN ENGLISH.

Rule I.

The indefinite article *un m. une f.* in english *a or an* is used in both languages before a substantive singular and not specified. Exam.

Un livre, a book. *Une maison*, a house. *Un ami*, a friend.
L'Angleterre est un pays fertile. England is a fruitfull country.

Rule II.

The definite article *le m, la f, les* for the plural of both genders, in english *the* is used in both languages before a substantive taken in a particular and specified sense. Exam.

Le cheval que j'ai acheté me conte cher, mais il est bon.

The horse which I have bought is dear, but he is good.

La crainte de la mort est naturelle aux hommes.

The fear of death is natural to men.

Rule III.

The English make use of the indefinite article *a or an* before nouns of *measure, weight & number*, when they want to express how much a thing is worth or sold for; the French on the contrary use the definite article *le, la, les* in such cases. Exam.

Measure.

Le charbon vaut deux chelins le boisseau.
Coals are worth two shillings a bushel.
J'ai acheté cette dentelle un écu la verge.
I have bought that lace for a crown a yard.

Weight.

Le beurre se vend dix sols la livre.
Butter is sold for ten pence a pound.

Number.

Les œufs valent quinze sols la douzaine.
Eggs are worth fifteen pence a dozen.

SECTION THE SECOND.

ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH AND NOT IN ENGLISH.

Rule IV.

The definite article is used in french and not in english, before all substantives, taken in an universal sense, that is, in the whole extent of their signification. Exam.

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortal,

La vertu est aimable. Virtue is amiable.

Dieu hait les méchants. God hates sinners.

The words *men*, *virtue* & *sinners* are taken in an universal sense; because all men are mortal, all virtue is amiable and God hates all sinners.

Rule V.

The definite article is used in french and not in english, before the names of Kingdoms, Countries & Provinces, when they are in the nominative or accusative cases, and also when they are preceded by a preposition. Exam.

La France & l'Angleterre sont deux puissants royaumes.

France and England are two powerful Kingdoms.

J'ai passé par l'Italie, l'Allemagne & la Russie.

I have passed through Italy, Germany and Russia.

These nouns usually take no articles, when they are in the genitive case, or after the preposition *en*. Exam.

Les royaumes de France & d'Angleterre sont puissants.

J'ai voyagé en Italie, en Allemagne & en Russie.

There are however, some names, of Kingdoms and Provinces, which take an article in the genitive case, as well as in others cases; such are *le Bengal*, *le Mexique*, *le Canada*, *le Poitou*, *le Maine*, *l'Anjou*, &c. which make in the genitive *du Bengal*, *du Mexique*, *du Canada* &c.

N. B. When the names of Kingdoms and Republicks are the same as those of their capital towns, they are considered as proper names, and as such take no article; of this

fort are *Naples, Vénise, & Gènes*. Thus we say *Vénise est une république*, not *la Vénise est une république*.

Rule VI.

The definite article is used in French and not in English, before adjectives and possessive pronouns substantively used. Exam.

Le blanc & le noir sont deux couleurs opposées.

White and black are two opposite colours.

Mon livre est meilleur que le vôtre.

My book is better than your.

Rule VII.

The partitive article *du m. sing. de la f. & des plur.* of both genders, in english *some* or *any*, is used in french, before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number or portion of its object. Exam.

Donnez moi, du pain, de la viande & des œufs.

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, and *some* eggs.

J'ai acheté du papier, de l'encre & des plumes.

I have bought paper, ink and pens.

Rule VIII.

If the substantive is preceded in french by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du, de la, or des*. Exam. *

Donnez moi de bon pain, de bonne viande & de bons œufs.

J'ai acheté de mauvais papier & de mauvaise encre.

N. B. Every time the words *some* or *any*, are or could be used in english, before a substantive, the partitive article *du, de la, des*, or the preposition *de*, must be used in french, according to the distinction of the two preceding rules.

* I call the words *de* and *a* two prepositions and not articles as some Grammarians do; who in multiplying the articles, have multiplied the difficulties, and confused the matter.

Rule IX.

Every noun which is *the nominative*, or *the case* of a verb, must have in french one of the three articles, *definite, indefinite, or partitive* of which before. Exam. *

L'or & l'argent ne sauroient rendre l'homme heureux.

Gold and silver cannot render man happy.

L'Espagne produit du vin, des oranges & des olives.

Spain produces wine, oranges and olives.

N. B. I do not comprehend in this rule, the proper names of persons or towns, neither the substantives preceded by a pronoun, or an adjective of number, which have no article, as we will see in the rules 14th. & 15th.

Rule X.

The articles are repeated in french before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number; in english on the contrary, they are indeclinable, and seldom repeated. Exam.

Le génie de la langue françoise consiste dans la clarté, la pureté, l'élégance & la force.

The genius of the french tongue consists, in clearness, purity, elegance, and strenght.

J'ai acheté de la viande, du fromage & des fruits.

I have bought meat, cheese and fruits.

SECTION THE THIRD.

ARTICLE USED IN ENGLISH AND NOT IN FRENCH.

Rule XI.

The definite article is used in english and not in french, before the ordinal numbers *the first, the second, the third, the fourth &c.* used in quotations, or after the christian name of a sovereign, exam.

Livre premier, chapitre six, section neuvième.

Book *the first*, chapter *the sixth*, section *the ninth*.

Charles premier, Philippe second, George trois.

*Charles the first, Philip the second, George the third. **

Rule XII.

The indefinite article is used in english and not in french, before all nouns, which express the *titles, professions, trade, country or any other attribute of the substantive antecedent, exam.*

Mon pere étoit noble.

My father was a noble man.

Votre frère est medecin.

Your brother is a physician.

Etes vous françois.

Are you a french man.

The reason why these nouns take no article in french, is because they are considered as adjectives; but if they were accompanied by an adjective, or followed by a genitive case, then they would be substantives, and as such take an article; exam.

Votre frère est un bon medecin.

your brother is a good physician.

Rule XIII.

The indefinite article is again used in english and not in french, in the five following cases.

1°. Before a substantive used by opposition to another. ex.

Le Roi fut reçu en triomphe, honneur qu'il méritoit bien.

The King was received in triumph, an honour, he deserved.

2°. Before a substantive which specifies or explains the things spoken of, exam.

J'ai lu aujourd'hui l'Empressé, comédie estimée.

I have read to day the Busy-body, an esteemed comedy.

3°. In the title of a book or of any performance, exam.

Grammaire sur la langue françoise.

A grammar on the french tongue.

4°. After the word *what* used to express a surprise, ex.

Quel bruit vous faites!

What a noise you make!

* Observe by the preceding examples that the Ordinal numbers, (the two first excepted) are rendered in french by the Cardinal, before the names of Sovereigns, and also often in quotations.

Quelle facheuse nouvelle!

What a dreadful news!

5°. After the word *many* when the noun following is in the singular number, exam.

Plusieurs personnes pensent ainsi.

Many a man thinks so.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

NO ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH NOR IN ENGLISH.

Rule XIV.

No article is used in french nor in english, before the word *God*, *Dieu*, nor before the proper names of Heathen Gods and Goddesses, of men, women, towns, villages, days, or months exam.

Dieu est présent par-tout, God is present every where.

Cicéron & Demosthènes étoient deux grands orateurs.

Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators.

Londres & Paris sont deux grandes capitales.

London and Paris are two capital Cities.

Jupiter & Venus étoient des Divinités Payennes.

Jupiter and Venus were Heathen Divinities.

Some, but few, proper names of persons, take an article in french, such are *l'Aricste*, *le Tasse*, *l'Arétin*, *le Titien*, &c. Some names of towns take also an article such are, *la Haie*, *l'Aigle*, *la Rochelle*, *le Havre*, *le Maine* &c.

Rule XV.

No article is used in french nor in english before a substantive preceded by any pronoun whatever, exam.

Mon ami viendra demain, my friend will come to-morrow.

Cette maison est neuve, this house is new.

Quelle heure est-il à présent? what's o'clock now?

N. B. The definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, before the cardinal numbers *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *quatre*, &c. when they are substantively used, or followed by a relative pronoun but not in other cases; thus we say, with an article, *rendez-moi les vingt*

livres que je vous prêtai le dix de mars. Return me the twenty pounds, I lent you the twentieth of March; and without art.
Prêtez moi vingt guinées: lend me twenty guineas.

Rule XVI.

No article, but the preposition *de* is used in french, after the words *espece, sorte, genre, or mélange, exam. ***

L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.

Man is expoied to all sorts of infirmities.

La jalousie est un mélange d'amour & de haine, de crainte & de désespoir.

Jalouly is a mixture of love and hatred, of fear and despair.

Rule XVII.

No article but the preposition, *de* is used before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the *nature, matter, species, quality or country* of the first Exam.

Un mal de tête, un mal de dent, a head-ach, a tooth-ach,
une montre d'or, des bas de soie: a gold watch, filck stockings.

De la laine d'Espagne, du vin de Bourgogne,
 Spanish wool, Burgundy wine.

Rule XVIII.

No article but the preposition *de* is used in french after the following words of quantity, scarcity or exclusion: *abondance* plenty, *assez* enough, *autant* as much, *beaucoup* much, *combien* how many, *nombre* number, *jamais* never, *moins* less, *pas* or *point* no, *peu* little, *plus* more, *quantité* quantity, *rien* nothing, *tant* so many, *trop* too much, exam.

Vous avez beaucoup d'esprit. You have much wit.

Il n'a point de prudence. He has no prudence.

Vous faites trop de bruit. You make too much noise.

Je n'ai que peu d'argent. I have but little money.

*** If these nouns were particularised, they should take an article*
ex. le Dieu des Chrétiens est présent par-tout.

Note. 1° The words *que* and *quoi* used in a sentence of admiration, are also followed by *de*. Exam.

Que de chagrins! How many sorrows!

Quoi de plus triste! What more sad!

Note. 2° The word *bien* is always followed by an article, and *beaucoup* never, exam.

Il a bien des amis, il a beaucoup d'amis.

He has a great many friends.

Rule XIX.

No article is used in either language before a substantive taken in a vague and indeterminate sense. A noun is taken in a vague sense,

1° After an adjective which governs the genitive case, exam.

Vous êtes digne de louanges: You are praise worthy.

La vie humaine est pleine de revers.

Human life is full of disappointments.

2° After the verbs and participles which are followed in english by the word *with*, whether this preposition be expressed in french by *de* or *avec*, exam.

Vous êtes bouffi d'orgueil. You are puffed up with pride.

Emplissez la bouteille de vin. Fill up the bottle with wine.

Je souffre avec patience. I suffer with patience.

3° After a verb followed by a noun which forms but one idea with it; which is known, when they are, or could be expressed by one word in english, as in the following examples,

Avoir pitié des malheureux. To pity the unfortunate.

Porter envie au bonheur d'autrui.

To envy the happiness of others.

Rendre visite à un ami, To visit a friend.

The article is not used after the prepositions *sans*, *avec*, or *par*, when the noun following is at the end of a sentence or is not specified, exam.

Vous parlez avec élégance: You speak elegantly.

A vaincre sans péril, on triomphe sans gloire.

To vanquish without danger, is to triumph without glory.

J'ai voyagé par terre & par mer.

I have travelled by sea and land.

The nouns mentioned in the six rules of this section should take an article in french, if they were taken in a particular sense.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Rule XX.

When there is a conjunction between two nouns, they are put in the same case. If a substantive is preceded by a preposition, that preposition is usually repeated in french before all others governed by it, exam.

Votre conseil plut au roi, au ministre & au parlement.

Your advice pleased the king, the minister and the parliament.

Un homme sans religion est dans un état de doute & de confusion, de crainte & de défiance,

A man without religion is in a state of doubt, fear and distrust.

Rule XXI

The latter of two substantives is generally put in the genitive case in french, whether it is in the genitive or dative in english, exam.

Les impies sont ennemis de la vertu.

Impious men are enemies to virtue.

Le chien est l'ami de l'homme. The dog is a friend to man.

Rule XXII.

The latter of two substantives is however put in the dative case in french, when the first expresses the use of the second exam.

Le marché au foin. The hay-market.

Un arme à feu; A fire arm.

Une salle à manger. A dining-room.

It is also most commonly put in the dative case when the first denotes some commodities, exam.

Appellez l'homme aux huitres : Call the Oyster-man.

Rule XXIII.

The English make often a transposition of words, and place the genitive case the first; this transposition is not allowed in french, and the order must be reversed; thus we say

Les gardes du roi. The king's guards.

Une fille de chambre. A chamber-maid.

La colère de Diane causa la mort d'Acteon.

Diana's anger was Acteon's death.

Rule XXIV.

A general collective (that is to say representing the whole object) such as the words *peuple*, *nation armée*, *flotte* &c. requires always in the singular the *adjectives*, *pronouns* and *verbs* to which it has reference, exam.

La grande armée françoise fut entièrement défaite.

The great french army was totally defeated.

Toute la flotte est en mer, elle partit hier matin.

The whole fleet is out, it set sail yesterday morning.

Rule XXV.

A noun collective partitive (that is which represents only a part of the whole object) such as *foule*, *nombre*, *multitude* &c. followed by a genitive plural, governs the verb and the pronoun in the singular, if it is preceded by a definite article, and in the plural if not, exam.

La multitude des étrangers rend le pain cher.

The multitude of foreigners make bread dear.

Une multitude de chrétiens s'égarent tous les jours.

A multitude of christians are led astray every day.

The reason of this difference is, that the collective, is a substantive when preceded by *le*, *la*, *les* and a kind of adjective, when not; in the first case the verb agrees with the collective, and in the second with the substantive which comes after the collective.

N. B. The verb is put in the plural, when it has for nominative any of these collectives *la plupart*, *beaucoup*, or *peu*, not followed by a substantive. Exam. *La plupart le croient*, not *le croit*; if they were followed by a substantive sing. the verb should be in the singular, as *la plupart du monde le croit*.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES. *

This chapter for the sake of order and perspicuity will be divided into four sections. *The first* explains the concord and the right placing of adjectives. *The second* treats of their government. *The third* has for object the adjectives of dimension, and *the fourth* comprehends whatever concerns the construction of comparatives and superlatives.

SECTION THE FIRST. -

OF THE CONCORD AND RIGHT POSITION
OF ADJECTIVES.

Rule XXVI.

All adjectives are declinable in french, and agree in gender & number with the substantive to which they are joined or relative: in english on the contrary, they are all indeclinable. Exam.

Un homme pieux; une femme pieuse; des filles pieuses.

A pious man; a pious woman; pious girls.

Ce tableau me coute cher, mais il est beau.

This picture cost me dear, but it is fine.

Cette maison me coute cher, mais aussi elle est belle.

This house cost me dear, but it is fine.

* See how to form the feminine of adjectives Pag. 39 and 40, their plural is formed from the singular as that of substantives of which before Pag. 35 and 36.

Rule XXVII.

When an adjective refers to several substantives singular, we put it in the plural, if it is separated from them by any verb, and in the singular if not. Exam.

La porte & la fenêtre étoient fermées. pl.

The door and the window were *shut up*.

J'ai trouvé la porte & la fenêtre fermée. sing.

I have found the door and the window *shut up*.

The reason of this difference, is that in the first case, the adjective agrees with both substantives, and in the second, it agrees with the last only.

Rule XXVIII.

When an adjective comes immediately after a verb, it is always put in the plural feminine, if it refers to several substantives feminine, and in the plural masculine, if they are of different genders, because it agrees with the most worthy gender. Exam.

Son courage & sa hardiesse me paroissent étonnants. pl. m.

His courage and boldness seem *astonishing* to me.

Votre mère & votre sœur sont savantes. pl. f.

Your mother and sister are *learned*.

Rule XXIX.

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are usually placed after in french and before in english; a conjunction must be put in french before the last adjective, it is sometimes left out in english. Exam.

Un homme ingénieux & sensible.

An ingenious sensible man.

Un livre long & ennuyeux. A long tedious book.

Une femme sage & vertueuse. A wise virtuous woman.

Rule XXX.

The adjectives *beau* fine, *bon* good, *grand* great, *gros* big, *jeune* young, *mauvais* bad, *méchant* wicked, *meilleur* better, *moindre* less, *petit* little, *saint* holy, *vieux* old, those of number, and all the *possessive*, *demonstrative* or *indeterminate* pro-

nouns (which some grammarians consider as mere adjectives) precede in french as in english, the substantive to which they are joined. Exam.

Nous avons perdu un grand Général dans cette guerre.

We have lost a great General in this war.

Les jeunes gens croient qu'ils vivront long-temps.

Young men believe they shall live long.

Note 1°. The adjective *cher* dear comes before the substantive, when it denotes affection, as *mon cher pere*, *ma chere mere*; my dear father, my dear mother; and after when it denotes the price of a thing. Exam. *Un livre cher*, a dear book. *Une maison chere*, a dear house.

Note 2°. We say *un grand homme*, for a great man, and *un homme grand*, for a tall man; *une grosse femme*, for a fat woman, and *une femme grosse*, for a woman with child; *une sage femme*, for a midwife, and *une femme sage*, for a modest or wise woman; *un galant homme*, for a man of honour, and *un homme galant*, for a courtier.

Rule XXXI.

The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule are always properly, and must usually be placed in french after the substantive which they qualify; in english on the contrary, they are always placed before. Exam.

Les personnes reconnoissantes ressemblent à des terres fertiles, qui donnent plus qu'elles ne reçoivent.

Grateful people are like those fruitful lands, which give more than they receive.

Le bien public est préférable à l'intérêt particulier.

Publick good is preterable to private interest.

Note. Adjectives which express some moral qualities, may sometimes be placed before or after the substantive; we can say for instance, *un ami fidel*, or *un fidel ami*, a faithful friend; but this is not often the case, therefore I advise the learner to put them after.

SECTION THE SECOND.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Rule XXXII.

Adjectives which denote *plenty* or *scarcity*, those which can be substantively used, and in general all those which are followed in english, by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with* or *by*, govern in french the genitive or ablative case, exam.

Je suis privé de tout. I am deprived of every thing.

La Reine est comblée d'honneur.

The Queen is loaded with honour.

— *Vos sœurs sont arrivées de France.*

Your sisters are arrived from France.

*this is the
ablative*

Rule XXXIII.

Adjectives which denote *aptness*, *fitness*, *inclination*, *ease*, *readiness* or any habit, govern in french, the noun in the dative case, and most commonly the verb in infinitive with *à*, exam.

Il est propre à tout. He is fit for any thing.

Cela est facile à dire. That is easy to say.

Un esprit troublé n'est pas propre à remplir son devoir.

A disturbed mind is not fit to discharge his duties.

Some adjectives govern the dative in french, and the genitive in english, such are *attentif à* heedful of, *sensible à* sensible of, *insensible à* insensible of. Exam. *Je suis sensible à vos bontés.* I am sensible of your kindnesses.

Rule XXXIV.

Some adjectives are followed in french by the preposition *à*, and in english by the preposition *in*, such are *curieux à* curious in, *exact à* precise in, *habile à* skilful in, *patient à* patient in, *zélé à* zealous in, Exam.

Vous êtes habile à tout faire.

You are skilful in doing every thing.

Je suis exact à mes engagements.

I am precise in my engagements.

Some others are often followed in french by the preposition *envers*, and in english by the preposition *to*, such are, *affable envers* affable to, *bon envers* good to, *cruel envers* cruel to, *poli envers* civil to. Exam.

Il faut être poli envers tout le monde.

We must be civil to every body.

SECTION THE THIRD.

ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

Rule XXXV.

The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in french by an adjective or by a substantive; thus *high* can be expressed by *de haut* or *de hauteur*, *long* by *de long* or *de longueur*, *broad* by *de large* or *de largeur*; *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur* not by *de profond*, and in general the subst. is more elegantly used than the adj.

You must observe to put always the preposition *de* before the word of dimension, and also before the word of number, if it is not preceded by a verb. Exam.

Une tour de deux cens pieds de haut ou de hauteur.

A tower two hundred feet high.

Une table de six pieds de long ou de longueur.

A table six feet long.

Une rivière de vingt pieds de profondeur not de profond.

A river twenty feet deep.

Rule XXXVI.

To express the *height*, *depth* or *breadth* of an object; the English make use of the verb *to be*, and the French of the verb *avoir*, as they always do before a word of number.

N. B. The preposition *de* is left out after the verb *avoir*, but it remains before the word of dimension. Exam.

Cette tour a deux cens pieds de hauteur.

This tower is two hundred feet high.

Cette table a six pieds de longueur. That table is six feet long.
Cette rivière a vingt pieds de profondeur.
That river is twenty feet deep.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES *

Rule XXXVII.

The word *as* used in english after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expressed in french by *que* and never by *comme*. Exam.

Vous êtes aussi riche que moi. You are as rich as I am.

Je ne suis pas si savant que vous. I am not so learned as you.

J'ai autant de livres qu'eux.

I have as many books as they have.

Not, *j'ai autant de livres comme eux, je ne suis pas si savant comme vous.*

Rule XXXVIII.

The word *by* which is often used after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is always expressed by *de*, and never by *par*. Exam.

Je suis plus grand que vous de toute la tête.

I am taller than you by the whole head.

Vous êtes plus jeune que moi de quatre ans.

You are younger than I am by four years.

Rule XXXIX.

The word *than* used after a comparative, is expressed by *que*, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun. Exam.

L'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe.

Asia is greater than Europe.

Il est plus heureux que vous. He is more fortunate than you.

* See pag. 42 how many sorts of comparatives and superlatives, and how to form them from adjectives.

N. B. The word *than* is always expressed by *de* before the cardinal numbers *un, deux, trois* &c. because then, there is no comparison of objects. Exam.

J'ai plus de quinze ans. I am more *than* fifteen years of age.

Vous avez plus de cent guinées.

You have more *than* a hundred guineas.

Not *j'ai plus que quinze ans ; vous avez plus que cent guinées.*

Rule XL.

The word *than* used in comparatives is usually expressed by *que de* before an infinitive mood, and by *que ne* before a verb in the indicative. Exam.

Il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger.

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge.

Les richesses sont plus dangereuses que la pauvreté n'est incommode.

Riches are more dangerous *than* poverty is troublesome.

Note 1°. If the first infinitive is preceded by the preposition *à*, then the word *than* is expressed by *qu'à*, Exam. *Il est plus disposé à vous nuire qu'à vous obliger.* He is more inclined to hurt *than* to oblige you.

Note 2°. The word *than* is expressed by *que* only, before an indicative mood, if there is a conjunction between the word *than* and the verb. Exam. *Vous apprenez mieux que quand vous étiez en France.* You learn better *than* when you were in France. *Mon frère se rétablit plutôt que s'il étoit à la ville.* My brother recovers sooner *than* if he was in town.

Rule XLI.

The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never: thus *the more* is expressed by *plus*, *the less* by *moins* and not by *le plus*, or *le moins* which is used only in superlatives. Exam.

Plus vous étudierez, plus vous profiterez, not *le plus.*

The more you will study, *the more* you will improve.

Plus je connois les hommes, moins j'estime la vie.

The more I know mankind, *the less* I value life.

Not *le plus je connois les hommes, le moins j'estime la vie.*

Rule XLII.

If a comparative of proportion is made with two substantives or two adjectives, they are placed before the verb in english, and after in french.

The words of this sort of sentences are disposed in the following order. 1°. We put *plus* or *moins*. 2°. The nominative of the verb. 3°. The verb. 4°. The adjective or substantive; the rest as in english. Exam.

Plus une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable.

The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable.

Moins il gagne d'argent, plus il fait de dépense.

The less money he gets, the more expenses he incurs.

In these sentences, the substantive is preceded by *de*, and the adjective is not.

Rule XLIII.

The superlative governs always, in french, the noun following in genitive case, and the verb in the subjunctive mood. Exam.

La France est la plus grande république d'Europe.

France is the greatest republick in Europe.

Vous êtes la Dame la plus aimable que je connoisse :

You are the most accomplished Lady I know.

Rule XLIV.

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*; but the superlative alone takes an article, if it precedes the noun. Exam.

La compagnie la plus agréable est rarement la meilleure compagnie :

The most pleasing company is seldom the best company.

Voilà la plus belle promenade, ou la promenade la plus belle.

This is the most beautiful walk.

Not. 1° The comparatives and superlatives agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun to which they refer.

Note 2° *Le* is indeclinable before *plus* and *moins* followed by an adverb, and also by an adjective, when there is no comparison of objects. Exam.

Nous devons parler *le plus* clairement qu'il nous est possible, and not *les plus clairement*. Nous ne pleurons pas toujours quand nous sommes *le plus* affligés, and not *les plus affligés*.

CHAPTER IV

OF PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS.

This Chapter is divided into five sections; *the first* enumerates the circumstances in which the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive, and shews how to express them in both cases. *The second* treats of the impersonal pronouns *it*, *they* or *them* which are used in english with reference to animals or things. *The third* ascribes to the personal and impersonal pronouns their proper place in a sentence, and explains the order in which they must be disposed, when they meet together. *The fourth* teaches when the pronouns are or not, to be repeated before the verb, which they govern or are governed by. *The fifth* tells us when the pronouns must be expressed by *lui* or *soi*, and shews their difference with accuracy and precision.

SECTION THE FIRST.

WHEN ARE THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS
CONJUNCTIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE. *

Rule XLV.

NOMINATIVE CASE.

The personal pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she* &c. are *conjunctive* and expressed by *je*, *tu*, *il* &c. when they are the nominative

* I pray the Reader to remember that I call personal pronouns not only those which are the nominative of a verb (as M. Porny do) but with M. M. Wailly, Chambaud & Perrin, all those

case of a verb, provided they are not joined to other noun or pronoun by a conjunction, Exam.

Je lis, tu parles, il doit, elle vient, nous avons, vous jouez.

I read, thou speakest, he owes, she comes, we have, you play &c.

Observe to use always *il* or *ils* with a reference to a noun masculine, and *elle* or *elles* with a reference to a feminine; thus this sentence, *they are rich* is expressed in french by *ils sont riches*, speaking of men, and by *elles sont riches* speaking of women.

The same pronouns are *disjunctive* and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux* or *elles*.

1° When they come before the word *qui* or after the words *que* or *seul*, Exam.

C'est moi qui le dis: It is I who say so.

Il est plus savant que moi: He is more learned than I.

Je suis plus jeune que lui: I am younger than he.

Eux seuls y étoient présents: They alone were present there.

2° When they are used in answer to a question. Exam.

Qui a fait cela? C'est moi; c'est lui; ce sont eux.

Who has done that? I, he, they.

3° When they are joined to other nouns or pronouns by a conjunction. Exam.

Mon frère & moi nous apprenons le français:

We learn french my brother and I.

4° When they come before a noun or a verb used by opposition or distinction to the first. Exam.

Vous aimez l'étude, & moi le jeu.

You like study, and I gaming.

Vous reviendrez à la ville & moi j'irai à la campagne:

You will return to town, and I will go into the country.

Observe that in the two last instances, the verb takes in french a personal pronoun of the plural, and of the most

which have a reference to persons; thus *je, moi* and *me* are personal pronouns of the first person singular, *tu, toi* and *te* of the second, *il, lui* or *elle* of the third &c. Of personal pronouns some are *conjunctive* and some *disjunctive*; the first take no articles nor prepositions before them, as you may see pag. 47 and 48. The second on the contrary take the preposition *de* in the gen. and *a* in the dat. Their construction is fully explained in the following rules.

worthy person for its nominative case, besides those used in english.

Rule XLVI.

GENITIVE CASE.

When the personal pronouns are in the genitive case, they are *disjunctive* and expressed by *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle &c.*
Exam.

Il se plaint de moi, je ne parle pas de lui.

He complains *of me*, I do not speak *of him*.

They are sometimes, but seldom *conjunctive*, and expressed by *en*. Exam.

Vous aimez ma cousine, vous en parlez souvent.

You love my cousin, you speak often *of her*.

Parliez vous de moi ? Oui nous en parlions.

Were you speaking of me ? Yes we were.

Rule XLVII.

When the personal pronouns are governed by a verb in the dative, they are most commonly *conjunctive*, and expressed by *me, te, lui, &c.* Exam.

Il me plait, je lui ferai du bien. Je leur parlerai.

He pleases *me*. I will do *him* good. I will speak *to them*.

They are *disjunctive* and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui &c* in three cases,

1°. When they come after a noun or a pronoun to which they are joined by a conjunction. Exam.

Je vous parle aussi bien qu'à eux ;

I speak to you as well as to *them*.

2°. When they are governed by a reflected verb. Exam.

Il s'adresse à moi ; je ne me fie pas à lui.

He directs himself *to me* ; I do not trust *him*.

Not, *il me s'adresse, je ne me lui fie pas.*

3°. When they are governed by any of the following verbs, *aller* to go, *courir* to run, *accourir* to run to, *boire* to drink, *penser, songer* to think, *venir* to come. Exam.

Il vient à nous, allez à lui, je pense à vous.

He comes to us, go to him, I think of you.

Not, *il nous vient, allez lui, je vous pense.*

Rule XLVIII.

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

When the personal pronouns are governed by a verb in the accusative, they are generally *conjunctive*, and expressed by *me, te, le, la, les* &c. Exam.

Je le connois. Je la verrai. Je les estime.
 I know *him*. I will see *her*. I esteem *them*.
 Not. *Je connois lui, je verrai elle, j'estime eux.*

Rule XLIX.

AFTER A PREPOSITION.

When the personal pronouns are preceded by a preposition, they are always *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle* &c. Exam.

Pour moi je pense ainsi. As for me I think so.
Vous parlerez après eux. You will speak after them.
 Not, *Pour me je pense ainsi; vous parlerez après les.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

OF THE IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS *it, they, them.*

Rule L.

The impersonal pronouns *it* or *they*, which the English use with reference to animals or things, are expressed in french by *il* or *elle* for the singular, and by *ils* or *elles* for the plural, when they are the nominative of a verb. *It* or *them* are expressed by *le, la, les*, when they are governed by a verb in the accusative case; thus speaking of a house we say

Elle est belle, je ne la vendrai pas.

It is fine, I will not sell it.

Observe that these pronouns are expressed in french in the same manner for the nominative and accusative as the personal pronouns of which before, and that they agree also in

gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference.

Rule LI.

The impersonal pronouns *it* or *them* used with reference to inanimate objects, are expressed by *en*, when the french verb governs the genitive case, whether they be preceded in english by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, *about*, *for* or *upon*. * Exam.

N'en parlez plus. Do not speak any more of it.

Vous m'avez rendu service, je vous en remercie.

You have done me a service, I thank you for it.

Vous avez obtenu une bonne place, je vous en félicite.

You have got a good place, I congratulate you upon it.

When the words *some* or *any* come after a verb and have a reference to a substantive antecedent, they are also expressed by *en*, Exam.

J'ai des pommes, en voulez-vous? Donnez m'en un couple.

Prenez en davantage. Qu'en ferai-je? Vous en donnerez à vos sœurs.

I have some apples, will you have any? Give me a couple. Take some more. What shall I do with them? You will give some to your sisters.

Rule LII.

The impersonal pronouns *it* or *them*, governed by a verb which requires the dative in french, are expressed by *lui* or *leur* as the personal pronouns, when they refer to animals or plants, and by *y*, when they refer to other inanimate objects, Exam.

Vos chevaux ont faim, donnez leur de l'avoine.

Your horses are hungry, give them some oats.

Cet arbre est beau, ne lui faites point de mal.

This tree is fine, do not hurt it.

Voilà un beau tableau, mettez y une bordure.

There is a fine picture, put a frame to it.

C'est une entreprise difficile, vous n'y réussirez pas.

It is a difficult undertaking, you will not succeed in it.

Not, *mettez lui une bordure.* Not, *Vous ne lui réussirez pas.*

* See the government of verbs in the syntax, chapter 13th.

If however the impersonal pronouns were said of inanimate objects personified, or were preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*, they should be expressed by *lui* or *leur*, and not by *y*. Thus *lui* and *y* can be said of the same object, joined to different verbs, Exam.

Cette maison est bien située, faites y faire des réparations, vous lui devez votre santé; not, Vous y devez &c.

This house is well situated, have some repairs done to it, you are indebted to it for your health.

The words *en* and *y* of which in the two preceding rules, are also two adverbs of place. *En* stands for the words *hence*, *from thence*, and *y* for *there* or *thither*, Exam.

Voulez-vous venir à Londres? Non, j'en viens.

Vill you go to London? No, I come from *thence*.

Avez-vous été en France? Non, je n'y ai jamais été.

Have you been in France? No, I have never been *there*.

Rule LIII.

When the impersonal pronouns *it* or *them* are preceded by a preposition, they cannot be expressed by *lui* or *elle*, *eux* or *elles*, which in this case are said only of persons or personified objects; but they are most commonly left out, and the preposition used in english, becomes an adverb when it conveys sufficiently the idea, Exam.

Le Roi étoit pour la guerre, mais le Parlement fut contre.

The King was for the war, but the Parliament was against it.

Approchez-vous du feu. Je suis tout auprès.

Come near the fire. I am near it.

If the preposition cannot become an adverb, we must give the sentence another turn, Exam.

D'abord la maison fut brûlée, & ensuite l'église.

At first the house was burnt, and after it the church.

Rule LIV.

The supplying pronoun *le*, *la*, *les* is always used in french, before the verb in answer to a question, though there is no pronoun expressed in english.

Le is used with reference, 1°. to a substantive singular and masculine. Exam. *êtes-vous le frere de Pierre? Oui je le suis*

Are-you Peter's brother? Yes, I am. 2°. with reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers. Exam. *vos freres sont-ils savants?* Non, ils ne le sont pas. Are your brothers learned? No they are not. *Vos sœurs sont-elles malades?* Oui, elles le sont. Are your sisters sick? Yes, they are. 3°. with reference to verbs. Exam. *Croyez-vous qu'ils viennent?* Oui, nous le croyons. Do you think they will come? Yes, we do. *

La is used with reference to a substantive singular and feminine. Exam. *Etes-vous la femme de Pierre?* Oui, je la suis. Are you Peter's wife? Yes, I am.

Les is used with reference to a substantive plural of both genders. Exam. *Sont-ce là vos livres?* Oui, ce les sont. Are these your books? Yes, they are. *Sont-ce là vos maisons?* Non, ce ne les sont pas. Are these your houses? No, they are not.

Le indeclinable is also used without interrogation with reference to adjectives or verbs of both genders, it stands for the words *it* or *so* sometimes expressed in english, but for the most part understood. Exam. *Vous êtes heureuse, & moi je ne le suis pas,* You are happy, and I am not. *Je le disois, mais vous ne le vouliez pas croire.* I said so, but you would not believe it.

SECTION THE THIRD.

THE RIGHT PLACING OF PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Rule LV.

The personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, or elles* precede usually the verb of which they are the nominative case.

They can be separated from it by the particle *ne* and the governed pronouns, if there are any, but never by any adverb. Exam.

* We can also answer *oui Monsieur, oui Madame &c.* without repeating the verb the question is asked by.

Il ne les a pas vus. Je ne leur parlerai pas.

He has not seen them. I will not speak to them.

Vous dites toujours la vérité. Il parle souvent de vous.

You always speak the truth. He often speaks of you.

Not vous toujours dites la vérité. Il souvent parle de vous.

They are placed immediately after the verb or its auxiliary.

1°. In an interrogative sentence. Exam.

Parlez-vous françois? L'avez-vous appris long-temps?

Do you speak french? Have you learnt it long?

2°. When they are the nominative of the verbs *dire, répondre, répliquer, continuer, poursuivre*, or *s'écrier* used in a sentence, as by parenthesis. Exam.

Vous voyez, dit-il l'état où je suis réduit.

You see, said he, the condition I am reduced to.

Pourquoi, lui répondis-je, ne me l'avez-vous pas dit plutôt.

Why, did I answer him, have you not told it me before.

3°. Most frequently when the verb is preceded by the conjunctions *au moins, du moins, aussi, ainsi, en vain, peut-être, à peine* and some others. Exam.

En vain cherchez-vous des excuses. Peut-être viendra-t-il.

In vain you seek for excuses. Perhaps he will come.

Rule LVI.

The personal and impersonal pronouns, are placed in french as in english, immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the second person singular, the first or second plural of the imperative affirmative. Exam.

Parlez leur, écrivez lui, répondez nous, voyez les.

Speak to them, write to him, answer us, see them.

If the verb which is in the imperative affirmative governs two pronouns, the accusative goes the first. Exam.

Donnez le moi, vendez le leur. Give it me, sell it them.

When *y* or *en* meet with another pronoun, they go the last. However *moi* is placed after *y*, and *m'en* is used instead of *moi en*. Exam.

Menez nous y; menez les y; menez y moi.

Carry us thither, carry them thither, carry me thither.

Donnez leur en, donnez nous en, donnez m'en.

Give them some, give us some, give me some.

Not donnez en leur, donnez en nous, donnez en moi.

Rule LVII.

When the verb is in any other tense or person, than the first and second of the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are always put immediately before it, in a simple tense, and before its auxiliary in a compound one. Exam.

Vous ne les connoissez pas, vous ne les avez pas vus.

You do not know them, you have not seen them.

Ne leur parlez pas, ne me refusez pas.

Do not speak to them; do not refuse me.

When there are in the same sentence, two imperatives affirmative, joined by a conjunction, the governed pronouns are placed after the first, and before the second. Exam.

Prêtez le moi ou me le vendez. Lend or sell it me.

Pardonnez leur ou les punissez sur le champ.

Forgive or punish them directly.

The governed pronouns do not precede any other verbs than those they are governed by, or their auxiliaries, thus we say.

Je voulois leur parler, il pouvoit le faire.

Not *je leur voulois parler*, not *il le pouvoit faire*.

I wanted to speak to them, he could do it.

Rule LVIII.

When two or more pronouns are governed by a verb, which is not in the imperative affirmative, those of the first and second persons precede those of the third; and if they are both of the third person, the accusative is placed before the dative; *y* & *en* go the last; or what is the same, they are invariably placed before the verb in the following order.

Me, te, nous, vous, go before, le, la, les.

Le, la, les, go before, lui, leur.

Lui, leur, go before, y.

Y, go before, en. Exam.

Il me le donne, il vous l'a prêté, il nous les a envoyés.

He gives it me, he has lent it you, he has sent them to us.

Il le lui donne, il le leur prêtera, il les lui a envoyés.

He gives it him, he will lend it to-them, he has sent them to him.

Je vous y en porterai, je leur y en ai porté,

I will carry you some thither, I have carried some thither to them.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

WHEN THE PRONOUNS ARE OR NOT TO BE
REPEATED IN FRENCH.

Rule LIX.

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons as, *je, tu, nous, vous*, are usually repeated in french, before every verb of which they are the nominative case. Exam.

Vous aimerez Dieu de tout votre cœur, vous pardonnerez à vos ennemis, & vous prierez pour vos persécuteurs.

You should love God with all your heart, you should forgive your enemies & pray for those who persecute you.

The pronouns of the third person are repeated 1°. When they are at different tenses. 2°. When the second is preceded by any other conjunction than *et* or *ni*. 3°. When the first is affirmative and the second negative or *vice versa*, ex.

1°. *Elle est modeste, & elle le sera toujours, je suis sûre.*

She is and will always be modest, I am sure.

2°. *Il le dit, mais il ne le croit pas.*

He says so, but he does not believe it.

3°. *Elles sont aimables, puis qu'elles vous plaisent.*

They are lovely, since they please you.

In other circumstances the pronouns of the third persons, are not usually repeated before verbs which are in the same tense, thus we say.

Il prit des villes, conquit des provinces, & subjuguâ des nations.

He took towns, conquered provinces, and subdued nations.

Rule LX.

The governed pronouns are always repeated in french before every verb; in english on the contrary, they are seldom repeated, exam.

Un fils bien élevé ne s'arme jamais contre son pere, il l'aime, l'honore & le respecte.

A son well educated never rebels against his father, he loves, honours and respects him.

SECTION THE FIFTH.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN *lui, elle, se, and soi.*

Rule LXI.

The compound pronouns *himself, herself, themselves*, joined to a verb are generally expressed by *se* if it is reflexive; and *himself* by *lui* or *lui-même*, *herself* by *elle* or *elle-même*, *themselves* by *eux* or *eux-mêmes*, for the m. *elles* or *elles-mêmes*, for the f. if not, exam.

Il se soumet à vos ordres.

He submit himself to your orders.

Elle parle toujours d'elle or d'elle-même.

She always speaks of herself.

Ils sont venus d'eux-mêmes.

They are come of their own accord.

The compound pronouns *himself, or herself* are expressed by *soi* speaking of persons in general, and after the indeterminate pronouns *on, chacun, quelqu'un, quiconque, celui, or celle-qui*. Exam.

L'homme qui n'aime que soi, n'est pas propre pour la société.

The man who loves nobody but *himself*, is not fit for society.

Chacun agit pour soi en ce monde.

Every one acts for himself in this world.

Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi est indigne de vivre.

Whoever thinks only of himself is unworthy to live.

The word *soi* is not used with reference to a noun plural.

Rule LXII.

The impersonal pronoun *itself* is expressed by *soi*, and not *lui*, when it has reference to the words, *cela*, *ceci*, or to a substantive singular and masculine which represents an inanimate object. Exam.

Cela est bon en soi, That is good in itself.

L'aimant attire le fer à soi

Load-stone attracts iron to itself

When *itself* has a reference to an animate object, it is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*. It is also expressed by *elle-même* and not by *soi*, when it refers to an inanimate object of the fem. gender. Exam,

La terre est fertile d'elle-même.

Earth is fruitful of itself.

CHAPTER V.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Rule LXIII.

The conjunctive possessive pronouns are repeated in french before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number, Exam.

Mon père, ma mère et mes frères sont à la campagne.

My father, mother and brother are in the country.

The English make their possessive pronouns agree with the possessor, and the French on the contrary with the thing possessed; thus, *his* is often expressed by *sa*, and *her* by *son*. Exam. speaking of a woman, we say, *son père est mort*, his father is dead. *Son mari est jeune*; her husband is young. And speaking of a man, we say, *sa femme est belle*, his wife is handsome; *sa fille est mariée*, his daughter is married.

When a noun feminine begins with a consonant, we use the possessive pronouns *ma*, *ta*, *sa* before it, and *mon*, *ton*, *son* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, Exam.

Ma table f. *mon histoire* f. My table, my history.

Sa maison f. *son âme* f. His house, his soul &c.

Rule LXIV.

When we speak to our relations or friends, we use in french the possessive pronouns, *mon, ma, mes*, before the words *fil, fille, sœur, frère, père, mère, oncle, tante* &c. Exam.

Où êtes-vous, ma fille? Where are you daughter?

Me voici, mon père. Here I am, father.

Mon frère, voulez-vous venir avec moi? Oui, ma sœur.

Brother, will you come with me? Yes, sister.

Rule LXV.

When we ask any body some particulars of their relations or friends, the qualifications of *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle*, &c, are usually prefixed in french to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos*, Exam.

Comment se porte Monsieur votre père?

How does your father do.

Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs sont-elles à la maison?

Are your sisters at home?

Rule LXVI.

The possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her*, &c. are expressed in french by the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, leur*, in the dative; and not by *mon, ton, son* &c. when the verb which precedes them, denotes an action over any part of the body. Exam.

Vous m'avez rompu le bras. You have broke my arm.

Je lui ai coupé le doigt. I have cut his finger.

Vous leur marchez sur le pied, you tread upon their feet.

Not, *mon bras, son doigt, leur pied.*

Rule LXVII.

If the verb does not express an action over any part of the body; the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her* &c. are expressed by *mon, ton, son* &c. when the sentence does not sufficiently determine whose arm, leg, feet, eye &c. we are speaking. Exam.

Je vois que mon bras enfle. I see that my arm swells.

Pensez-vous que ma main guérisse.

Do you think my hand will be cured.

These pronouns are quite left out in french, and the definite article is used instead of them, if there is no equivocal to be feared. Exam.

J'ai mal au côté. I have a pain in my side.

Il a mal aux yeux. His eyes are sore.

OBSERVE. I put *mon bras, ma main*, in the first sentences, because I can see another person's arms swelling as well as mine; and I put *au côté, aux yeux*, not *à mon côté, à ses yeux*, because I cannot feel pains in any other side than mine, nor can he have other eyes sore than his own. This distinction is a delicate point, and must be attended to.

Rule LXVIII.

When the possessive pronouns *its* or *their* are used with reference to an inanimate object, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur*; or by *en* according to the following distinction.

1°. By *son, sa, ses, leur*, when they belong to the same verb as the noun to which they have reference, and also when they are in any other case than in the nominative or accusative. Exam.

Londres a ses beautés: j'admire la grandeur de ses rues

London has *its* beauties: I admire the size of *its* streets.

2°. By *en* when they are in the nominative or accusative, and do not belong to the same verb as their antecedent. Ex.

Londres est une belle ville, j'en admire la grandeur.

London is a fine town, I admire *its* extent.

When *its* or *their* have reference to an animate object, they are always expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*. Exam.

Votre cheval perd son fer; Your horse loses its shoes.

Rule LXIX.

The disjunctive possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers* &c. agree in french in gender and number with the substantive to which they have a reference, and are always preceded by the definite article *le, la, les*. Exam.

Beaucoup de maisons ont été détruites pendant le siège, la vôtre & la mienne ont été brûlées, mais la leur n'a point de mal.

Many houses have been destroyed during the siege, *yours* and *mine* have been burnt, but *theirs* has not suffered.

His, her, our, your, their are conjunctive before a noun, and disjunctive without; see their difference pag. 49 and 50.

Rule LXX,

When the disjunctive possessive pronouns *mine, thine &c.* are preceded by *of*, they are expressed in french by the conjunctive *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, and not by *le mien, le tien, le sien &c.* Exam.

Un de mes amis; A friend of mine, not *un ami des miens*.

Un de vos livres; A book of yours, not *un livre des vôtres*.

Turn, one of my friend; one of your books, and in the same ways all sentences of this sort.

Rule LXI.

The disjunctive *mine, thine &c.* are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles* when they come after the verb *to be*, which has for nominative a substantive or the personal pronouns *il* or *elle*, Exam.

Ce livre est à moi; That book is mine.

Il n'est pas à vous je crois; I do not think, it is your's.

If the verb *être* was preceded by *ce*, then *mine* and *thine &c.* should be expressed by *le mien, le tien, le sien &c.* Exam.

Est-ce là votre montre? Oai, c'est la mienne.

Is that your watch? Yes, it is mine.

N B. If a substantive comes after the verb *être* signifying *to belong*, it is put in french in the dative case, and in the genitive in english, Exam.

Ce cheval est à mon père: This horse is my father's.

CHAPTER VI.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Rule LXXII.

The demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are expressed in french by *ce* before a substantive singular and masculine, when it begins with a consonant, Exam. *Ce jardin*; This garden, and by *cet* when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute as, *cet oiseau* this bird, *cet homme* this man. by *cette* before a substantive feminine as, *Cette maison*, that house. *These* and *those* are expressed by *ces* before a substantive plural of both gender as. *Ces hommes, ces femmes*; these men, these women.

The demonstrative pronouns are repeated before every substantive and agree with each in gender and number, Ex.

Ce jardin, cet arbre, cette maison & tous ces meubles ne valent pas trois cens guinées,

This garden, this tree, this house and all this furniture are not worth three hundred pounds.

To determine more precisely the object we are speaking of, we add often in french the particle *cì* or *là*, to the substantive preceded by *ce, cet, cette* or *ces*, Exam.

Cet homme-là est un coquin; That man is a rogue.

Ces plumes-ci ne valent rien.

These pens are good for nothing.

Rule LXXIII.

Ceci, Cela. This, That.

The demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are expressed in french by *ceci* and *cela* when they are used to point at some object without specifying what it is, Exam.

Ceci est bon, cela est mauvais; That is good, that is bad.

Vous demandez toujours pourquoi ceci, pourquoi cela.

You always ask what is this for, what is that for.

Rule LXXIV.

The pronouns *that*, *which* or *what* signifying *that thing which*, are expressed in french by *ce qui* or *ce que* always singular and masculine. *Ce qui* is used when there is no nominative case between it and the verb, and *ce que* when there is one, Exam.

Ce qui est agréable au goût, est souvent contraire à la santé.

What is agreeable to the taste, is often prejudicial to the health.

Vous me donnez ce que vous n'aimez point.

You give me *that which* you don't like.

When *ce qui* or *ce que* begins a sentence of two parts, the word *ce* must be repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it is followed by a verb or a substantive in the plural number. Exam.

Ce que je crains le plus, ce sont les trahisons;

What I fear most, is treason.

Ce que je desire le plus, c'est qu'on fasse la paix;

What I wish for most, is that peace may be made.

The demonstrative *ce* may or may not be repeated, when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive singular; but it must not, when the verb *être* is followed only by an adjective, Exam.

Ce que je demande, est or c'est une amitié réciproque;

What I ask for, is a reciprocal friendship.

Ce que j'ai mangé étoit excellent, not c'étoit excellent;

What I have eaten was very good.

Rule LXXV.

When the demonstrative pronouns are related to several substantives, *this* and *these* have reference to the objects nearest or last spoken of, and are expressed *this* by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci*; *these* by *ceux-ci* or *celles-ci*; *that* and *those* have reference to the most distant objects and are expressed, *that* by *celui-là* or *celle-là*, *those* by *ceux-là* or *celles-là* according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference, Exam.

Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant nous négligeons celle-ci, & nous sacrifions tout pour celui-là.

The body perishes, the soul is immortal; however we neglect *this*, and sacrifice every thing for *that*.

Voici de bons livres; lesquels aimez-vous le mieux, de ceux-ci ou de ceux-là.

Here are good books, which do you like best, *these*, or *those*.

N. B. *the former* is also expressed by *celui* or *celle-là*, and *the latter* by, *celui* or *celle-ci*.

Rule LXXVI.

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed immediately by the preposition *of*, they are expressed *that of* by *celui* or *celle de*, and *those of* by *ceux* or *celles de*. Exam.

Il dépense tout son bien & celui de sa femme.

He spends all his fortune, and *that of* his wife.

Prenez ces chevaux ou ceux de mon fils.

Take these horses or *those of* my son.

Rule LXXVII.

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by *which* expressed or understood, they are expressed, *that which* by *celui* or *celle qui*, and *those which* by *ceux* or *celles qui* or *que*. Exam.

Cette maison est plus grande que celle que j'ai vendue.

This house is larger than *that which* I have sold.

Ces livres valent mieux que ceux que vous m'avez prêtés.

These books are better than *those* you have lent me.

The word *which* used in answer to a question, is also expressed by *celui* or *celle qui*, when the question is asked by *which*. Exam.

Laquelle de ces oranges voulez-vous? Celle qu'il vous plaira.

Which of these oranges will you have? *Which* you please.

Rule LXXVIII.

When the personal pronoun *he*, *she* or *they* are the antecedent of *who*, *that* or *which*; they are not expressed by *il*

or *elle* as before ; but *he who* is rendered by *celui qui*, *she who* by *celle qui*, *they who* by *ceux* or *celles qui*. Exam.

Celui qui ne sauroit garder un secret est incapable de gouverner.

He who cannot keep a secret is incapable of governing.

Ceux, que vous protégez, vous trahissent.

They whom you protect betray you.

When the pronouns *he*, *she*, or *they* are separated from the relative pronouns, *who* or *which* ; they must be joined in french, and the second part of the sentence, is then expressed the first Exam.

Celui, qui se revolte contre sa patrie, est un mauvais citoyen.

He is a bad citizen, *who* rebels against his country.

Ceux, qui croient que les rois sont heureux, se trompent.

Those are mistaken, *who* believe, that kings are happy.

These pronouns can however be separated as in english adding the particle *là* to *celui* or *celle*. Exam.

Celui-là est un mauvais citoyen qui se revolte contre sa patrie.

He is a bad citizen *who* rebels against his country.

Ceux-là se trompent qui croient que les rois sont heureux.

They are mistaken *who* think that kings are happy.

CHAPTER VII.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS. *

Rule LXXIX.

The relative pronouns, *who*, *that*, or *which* are expressed by *qui* for all sorts of objects, when there is no nominative case between them and the verb ; and by *que* when there is one, Exam.

L'homme qui parle. Le livre qui est sur la table.

The man *who* speaks. The book *which* is on the table.

La femme que j'ai vue. La leçon que j'ai apprise.

* See the definition and declension of relative pronouns pag. 53.

The woman *whom* I have seen. The lesson *which* I have learnt.

The pronoun *que* is not always in the accusative case, as it may be seen by the following examples.

C'est de vous que je me plains; c'est à vous que je parle; c'est contre vous que j'écris.

It is of you I complain; it is to you I speak; it is against you I write.

Que in the first example is for *de qui*, for *à qui* in the second, and for *contre qui* in the third: the word *that* which answers to it, is often understood in english.

Rule LXXX.

The relative pronouns *whose*, of *whom* or of *which* are usually expressed by *dont* for all sorts of objects, when the noun, to which they have reference, is in the nominative or accusative cases. Exam.

J'ai vu la personne dont vous parlez.

I have seen the person of *whom* you speak.

C'est une maladie dont on ne connoit pas la cause.

It is an illness the cause of *which* is unknown.

If the antecedent is not in the nominative or accusative, instead of *dont*, we generally make use of *de qui* speaking of persons, and always of *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* &c. speaking of animals and things. Exam.

C'est une personne à la discrétion de qui je n'oserois me fier.
not *dont*

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust.

C'est une maladie aux progrès de laquelle, il faut apporter de prompts remèdes, not aux progrès de qui or dont.

It is an illness to the progress of *which* one cannot apply too quick remedies.

Note. The relative pronoun *from whom*, which answer to the latin ablative is always expressed by *de qui* and never by *dont*. Thus we say,

L'homme de qui (not dont) j'ai reçu hier une lettre, est malade.

The man *from whom* I received a letter yesterday is sick.

Rule LXXXI.

When the relative pronouns are in the dative case or after a preposition, they are usually expressed by *qui* speaking of persons, and always by *lequelle* or *laquelle* sing. *lesquels* or *lesquelles* plur. speaking of animals and things.

Exam.

Votre père est un homme à qui j'ai beaucoup d'obligations & sans qui je serois mort à présent.

Your father is a man to whom I am much obliged, and without whom I should have been dead before now.

La gloire à laquelle les Héros aspirent est souvent une fausse gloire.

The glory to which Heroes sacrifice is often a false glory.

C'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique.

It is a reason to which there is no reply.

Rule LXXXII.

When the relative pronouns are in genitive, dative, ablative or after a preposition and refer to an inanimate object they are indifferently expressed by *où* or *lequel*, *laquelle* &c. if the verb denotes some motion or rest, at least figuratively

Exam.

Évitez les fautes où ou dans lesquelles je suis tombé.

Avoid the faults in which I have fallen.

Je connois le principe d'où ou duquel découle tout votre système.

I know the principle from which your system is derived.

Note. *Où* and *d'où* are also adverbs of place, and stand for the words *where* or *whence*. Exam.

Où allez-vous ? D'où venez-vous ?

Par où avez-vous passé ?

Where are you going ? From whence do you come ?

Where have you passed.

Rule LXXXIII.

In french the relative pronouns are placed immediately after the substantive to which they have reference, or the preposition they are governed by. These pronouns are followed immediately by the nominative of the verb. Exam.

Qui est ce Dieu dont vous implorez le secours.

Who is that God *whose* assistance you beg.
Il rejetta un avis dont il connoissoit l'utilité.
 He rejected an advice the utility of *which* he knew.

Rule LXXXIV.

The relative pronouns are always of the same gender, number and person as the substantive or pronoun antecedent to which they have reference, Exam.

C'est moi qui le dis. C'est vous qui l'avez fait.

It is I *who* say so. It is you *who* have done it.

Les livres pour lesquels j'ai souscrit :

The books I have subscribed for.

La maison dans laquelle je demeure ;

The house in *which* I live

N B. The relative pronouns are often left out in english ; but never in french, and one of the following *qui, que, dont, laquelle, laquelle* &c. must be used according to the preceding rules, every time the words *who, whom, which* or *that* could be expressed in english, Exam.

L'homme que vous voyez ; The man you see.

Le livre que vous lisez est à moi ; The book you read is mine.

La maison que j'ai achetée est neuve ;

The house I have bought is a new one.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogatives pronouns are in english these three *who, which* and *what* ; they are expressed in french as follows.

Rule LXXXV.

The interrogative pronoun *who, whose, to whom* &c. which is said only of persons, is expressed in french by *qui* or *qui est-ce qui*, when it is the nominative case of a verb, by *qui* in all other cases and never by *que* or *dont* as the relative pronouns of which before, Exam.

Qui or *qui est-ce qui est là*? Who is there?
De qui parlez-vous? Of whom do you speak?
Avec qui demeurez-vous? With whom do you live?
A qui écrivez-vous? To whom do you write?

Rule LXXXVI.

When the interrogative pronoun *which* is used to ask which of the persons or things spoken of, is the best or worst &c. it is always expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural, Exam.

Laquelle de mes sœurs voulez-vous épouser?
Which of my sisters will you marry?
Lequel de ces chevaux me conseillez-vous d'acheter?
Which of these horses do you advise me to buy?

Rule LXXXVII.

When the interrogative pronoun *what* comes before a substantive, it is expressed in french by *quel* or *quelle* for the singular and by *quels* or *quelles* for the plural, Exam.

Quel crime cet homme a-t-il commis?
What crime has this man committed?
A quelle passion est-il enclin?
To what passion is he inclined?

Rule LXXXVIII.

When the interrogative pronoun *what* signifies *what thing* it is expressed in french by *que* or *qui est-ce qui* for the nominative, and by *que* or *qu'est-ce que* for the accusative, Exam.

Que vous est-il arrivé, or *qu'est-ce qui* vous est arrivé?
What has happened to you?
Que blâmez-vous dans cet ouvrage, or *qu'est-ce que* vous blâmez?
What do you blame in that work?

Rule LXXXIX,

When the pronoun *what* is in the genitive, dative or after a preposition, and signifies *what thing*, it is always

expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence be interrogative or not, Exam.

En quoi suis-je coupable? In what am I guilty?

Je sais de quoi il se plaint. I know of *what* he complains.

De quoi m'accusez-vous? Of *what* do you accuse me?

C'est en quoi vous vous trompez.

It is in *what* you are mistaken. *

Observations upon which and what.

Which. The word *which* is expressed in french four different ways, as you may observe from the examples of the preceding chapters.

1°. By *qui* in the nominative and *que* in the acc. as in the rule 79.

2°. By *dont* in the genitive, as in the rule 80.

3°. By *lequel* or *laquelle*, 1°. in the dative, 2°. after a preposition, 3°. in an interrogation as in the rules 81, 82 and 86.

4°. By *celui qui* or *celle qui* &c. in answer to a question as, in the rule 77.

What. The word *what* is expressed four different ways in french.

1°. By *ce qui* in the nom. and *ce que* in the acc. when it signifies *that thing which* as in the rule 74.

2°. By *quoi* in the genitive, dative or after a preposition; whether the sentence be interrogative or not, when it signifies *what is the thing which*, as in the rule 89.

3°. By *quel* or *quelle* &c. before a substantive in an interrogative sentence, as in the rule 87.

4°. By *que* or *qu'est-ce qui* or *que*, as in the rule 88.

* See the declension of interrogative pronouns pag. 54

CHAPTER IX.

ON THE DIFFERENT SORTS OF INTERROGATIONS.

Rule XC.

Besides the interrogative pronouns of which we have treated before, a question is often asked with the following adverbs, *combien* how much, how many; *comment* how; *pourquoi* what for; *où* where; *d'où* from whence; *par où* through what place. Exam.

Combien avez-vous de chevaux?

How many horses have you got?

Comment se porte Monsieur. votre père?

How does your father do?

Pourquoi ne répondez-vous pas? Why do you not answer?

Où allez-vous? D'où venez-vous?

Where are you going? From whence do you come?

Rule XCI.

When the following pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce* or *on* are the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, they are placed immediately after, in a simple tense, and after its auxiliary in a compound one. Ex.

Etes-vous malade? Avez-vous été malade?

Are you sick? Have you been sick?

Apprenez-vous le François? Avez-vous appris l'Italien?

Do you learn French? Have you learnt Italian?

Dit-on des nouvelles? Vous a-t-on dit des nouvelles?

Is there any news? Have you heard any news?

In an interrogative sentence we put always a hyphen thus (-) between the verb and the pronouns, as you may observe in the preceding examples. When the verb ends with a vowel and the pronoun begins with another, we put a *t* with two hyphens between them, to avoid the hard sound which would result of the meeting of two vowels. Exam.

Parle-t-il? Viendra-t-elle? Chante-t-elle bien?

Does he speak? Will she come? Does she sing well?

A verb which ends in *e* mute in the first person takes an acute accent when it is interrogatively used. Exam.

Je parle, parlé-je? Je me promène, me promené-je?

I speak, do I speak? I walk, do I walk?

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used, has but one syllable in the first person singular of the present of the indicative mood, we ask the question with *est-ce que*. Thus,

Est-ce que je perds, est-ce que je dors? &c. Not, *perds-je, dors-je?*

Do I lose? Do I sleep?

Rule XCII.

When a verb interrogatively used, has for its nominative case a substantive or any of the following pronouns, *le mien, le tien, le sien, le nôtre, le vôtre, le leur, ceci, cela, quelqu'un, aucun, personne* or *rien*, it is put after them in french; but the verb is always followed by *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, as if there was no nominative case before, thus we say:

Le dîner est-il prêt? Is dinner ready?

Cela est-il bon à manger? Is that good to eat?

Quelqu'un m'a-t-il demandé? Did any body ask for me?

Toute la compagnie est-elle arrivée?

Is all the company come?

Rule XCIII.

The English put the demonstrative pronouns *this* or *that* for the sing. *these* or *those* for the plural, before the possessive *my, his, your, their* &c. when they ask to whom belong such or such a thing. These sorts of interrogations are expressed in french by *est-ce là, or sont-ce là*, if the sentence is affirmative; and by *n'est-ce pas là, or ne sont-ce pas là*, if negat. Ex.

Est-ce là votre maison? N'est-ce pas là votre maison?

Is that your house? Is not that your house?

Sont-ce là vos jardins? Ne sont-ce pas là vos jardins?

Are these your gardens? Are not these your gardens?

Rule XCIV.

The English ask often a question less to be informed, if such a thing is or is not, than to shew their surprise, if it

was; since they have positively ascertained before that it was not; these sorts of interrogations are expressed in french by *est-ce que*. Exam.

Est-ce qu'il pleut? It does not rain, does it?

Est-ce que votre frère est mort?

Your brother is not dead, is he?

If the question is negative, the first part of the sentence having positively affirmed that the thing in question is such or such, it is expressed in french by *n'est-ce pas que* at the beginning of a sentence, and by *n'est-ce pas* at the end. Ex.

N'est-ce pas qu'il fait beau tems? Or, *il fait beau tems n'est-ce pas!*

It is good weather, is it not.

N'est-ce pas que nous avons vu le Roi? Or, *nous avons vu le Roi n'est-ce pas?*

We have seen the King, have we not.

CHAPTER X.

DIFFERENT SORTS OF *Que*.

There are in french particularly five sorts of *que* called, *que* relative, *que* interrogative, *que* admirative, *que* conditional and *que* conjunctive. We have spoken at large of the two first in the seventh and eighth Chapters; we will treat of three others in the following rules.

Rule XCV.

The *que* admirative expresses wonder or surprise; it answers to the english words *how*, *how much*, *how many*. Ex.

Que vous êtes jolie! How pretty you are!

Que les ouvrages de Dieu sont admirables!

How wonderful are the works of God!

Que je hais les impies! How I hate the impious!

Obs. 1° That the adjective which follows *how*, is always put after the verb in french, exam. *Que je suis malheureux!* How unhappy I am! 2° That if *how much* or *how many* are followed by a substantive, the *que* which answers to them, is

always followed by *de* in french. Ex. *Que de peine vous avez pour moi!* How much trouble you take for me!

N. B. If *how many* was preceded by the preposition *of*, *to* or any other, it should be expressed by *combien de* and not by *que*. Exam. *A combien de dangers n'ai-je pas été exposé en France.* To how many dangers have I not been exposed in France.

Rule XCVI.

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence for the word *whether* and in the middle, to avoid the repetition of *si*: In both cases it governs the subjunctive mood. Exam.

Qu'il le fasse ou non, je ne m'en soucie pas.

Whether he does it, or not, I do not care.

S'il vient quelqu'un & que je sois sorti, envoyez moi chercher.

If some body comes & I am out, send for me.

Rule XCVII.

The *que* conjunctive may be used for many conjunctions and particularly for the ten following,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1°. Afin que, <i>that.</i> | 6°. Depuis que, <i>since.</i> |
| 2°. A moins que, <i>unless.</i> | 7°. Jusqu'à ce que, <i>till.</i> |
| 3°. Avant que, <i>before.</i> | 8°. Parce que, <i>because.</i> |
| 4°. Cependant, <i>yet.</i> | 9°. Quant, <i>when.</i> |
| 5°. De peur que, <i>for fear.</i> | 10°. Pourquoi, <i>why.</i> |
- 1°. *Venez ici que je vous parle.*
Come here *that* I speak to you.
- 2°. *Je n'irai pas le voir qu'il ne m'en prie.*
I will not go and see him *unless* he invites me.
- 3°. *Vous ne partirez pas qu'il ne soit jour.*
You shall not go out, *before* it is light.
- 4°. *Il aurait tout l'or du monde qu'il ne seroit pas content.*
Though he should have all the gold in the world, *yet* would not be satisfied.
- 5°. *Partez que le maître ne vienne?*
Go out *for fear* the master comes?
- 6°. *Combien y a-t-il que votre frère est mort?*
How long has your brother been dead?

- 7°. *Attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus.*
Wait till the rain is over.
- 8°. *Si je ne vins pas hier, c'est que j'avois des affaires.*
If I did not come yesterday, it was because I had business.
- 9°. *J'étois à Londres le jour qu'il mourut.*
I was at London the day he died.
- 10°. *Que ne repondez-vous, quand je vous parle?*
Why do you not answer, when I speak to you?

Note The conjunction *que* is placed between two verbs, and serves to particularise the sense of the first; that conjunction must be used in french every time the word *that*, is or could be used in english. Exam.

Je pense qu'on ne peut être heurcux sans pratiquer la vertu.

I think one cannot be happy without practising virtue.

Je maintiens qu'il a raison; il paroît que vous avez tort.

I maintain he is in the right; it appears you are in the wrong.

Observations.

The word *que* is also used 1° to join the two terms of a comparison as, *je suis plus jeune que vous.* I am younger than you. 2° to restrain a negative sentence, then it stands for *but* or *only* as *je n'ai que quinze ans.* I am but fifteen years of age. 3° to express a wish, a command, an imprecation or indignation as *qu'il périsse l'impie.* May the impious perish.

CHAPTER XI.

OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Rule XCVIII.

All the vague and general reports expressed in english by *they say, we say, people say, one says, it is said, it is reported* and such like, are rendered in french by *on* with the verb in the third person singular of the active voice. Exam.

On dit, on croit, on soutient partout que la chose est ainsi:

People say, it is thought, they maintain every where that it is so.

On n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions.

One is not always master of one's passions.

The passive voice is seldom used in french, therefore we often turn the passive into active, putting the pronoun *one* instead of the nominatives used in english, thus turn *it is said*, *it is reported*, &c by *one says*, *one reports* &c. And so on for others. Exam.

On croit que la paix se fera cette année.

It is believed that peace will be made this year, turn *one believes* &c.

A-t-on reçu des lettres de France aujourd'hui ?

Have letters been received from France to day ; turn *has one received* &c.

On a envoyé un courier en Espagne.

A courier has been dispatched to Spain.

On must be repeated before every verb, of which it is the nominative case. Exam.

On loue, on blame, on menace, on punit, &c.

We praise, blame, threaten, punish &c.

Rule XCIX.

On takes elegantly an *P* after the words *et*, *si*, or *on*. Ex.

Si l'on pratiquoit la vertu, on seroit heureux sur la terre, &

l'on se procureroit un bonheur éternel.

If we would practise virtue, we should be happy in this world, and procure ourselves an eternal happiness.

On vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.

You have been, or will be soon rewarded.

L'on is also used after *que* provided the next verb begins by the syllable *com* or *con*. Exam.

On apprend mieux ce que l'on comprend, que ce que l'on ne comprend pas.

We learn better what we understand, than what we do not.

N. B. *L'on* sounds better than *on* in the above sentences, and is always used by good authors in such cases; provided it be not followed by *le*, *la*, *les*, in which case *on* never takes an *l*. Thus we could not say, *mettez là votre lettre*, *l'on la lira*.

Rule C.

DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATIONS OF *même*.

The word *the same* is expressed in french by *le* or *la même* for the sing. and by *les mêmes* for the plural, whether it be joined or relative to a substantive. Exam.

La même chose ne plaît pas à tout le monde.

The same thing does not please every body.

Les usages ne sont pas les mêmes dans tous les pays.

Customs are not the *same* in every country.

The word *même* is often used in french, to give more energy to the speech; then it comes after a substantive or a pronoun, and answers to the english expressions *himself*, *herself*, *itself* &c. Exam.

Le roi même s'y opposa. The king *himself* opposed it.

La religion même le défend. Religion *itself* forbids it.

The word *même* is sometimes an adverb; then it answers to the english words *also* or *even*. Exam.

Il faut aimer tout le monde, même nos ennemis.

We must love every body, *even* our enemies.

Rule CI.

The words *many* and *several* are expressed by *plusieurs*, with or without a substantive. Exam.

Plusieurs se trompent en voulant tromper les autres.

Many deceive themselves, when they want to deceive others.

Ne vous appliquez pas à plusieurs choses à la fois.

Do not apply yourself to *several* things at once.

Rule CII.

The indeterminate pronouns *another*, *other*, are expressed by *un autre*, for the singular, and by *les autres* for the plural. These words are either pronouns or adjectives; when pronouns they are always masculine, and when adjectives, they agree in gender & number with the substantive to which they have reference. Exam.

Un autre ne vous auroit pas pardonné si facilement que moi.

Another would not have forgiven you so easily as I did.

Ne parlez pas mal des autres; si vous ne voulez pas que les autres parlent mal de vous.

Do not speak ill of others; if you will not that others speak ill of you.

N. B. When the word *others* is in the genitive or dative cases, it is most commonly expressed in french by *autrui*.
Exam.

Il ne faut point desirer le bien d'autrui.

We must not covet other men's goods.

Ne faites point à autrui; ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.

Do not do by others, what you would not be done by.

Rule CIII.

The indeterminate pronouns *every one*, *every body* are generally expressed by *chacun m.* and *sing.* Exam.

Dieu rendra à chacun selon ses œuvres.

God will reward *every body* according to his works.

Chacun vit à sa manière.

Every one lives after his own way.

The word *every* before a substantive is expressed by *chaque*; *each* is expressed by *chacun*, or *chacune*, when it is not followed by a substantive. Exam.

Chaque science a ses principes.

Every science has its principles.

Chaque pays a ses usages. Every country has its customs.

Remettez ces livres chacun à sa place.

Put these books, *each* in its place.

Les tableaux des grands maîtres ont chacun leur mérite.

The pictures of great painters have *each* their merit.

Rule CIV.

The indeterminate pronouns *some body*, *any body* are expressed by *quelqu'un* *sing.* and masculine. Exam.

Quelqu'un viendra dîner avec nous.

Somebody will come to dine with us.

Quelqu'un a-t-il jamais douté de l'existence de Dieu?

Has ever *any body* doubted of the existence of God?

The words *some* & *any* before a substantive are expressed by the partitive article *du, de la, des,* or by *quelque*. Exam.

Donnez moi de l'encre, du papier & des plumes.

Give me *some* ink, *some* paper and *some* pens.

Il y a des défauts or quelques défauts dans cet ouvrage.

There are *some* faults in this work.

When *some* or *any* are substantively used, they are expressed by *quelques uns* or *quelques unes* always plural as.

Je me servirai de quelques uns de vos livres.

I will make use of *some* of your books.

Connoissez-vous quelques unes de ces dames.

Do you know *any* of these ladies.

When *some* or *any* have reference to a substantive used in the preceding sentence, they are usually expressed by *en*, as we have seen before, rule 51.

OF *Tout* AND ITS VARIOUS CONSTRUCTIONS.

The word *Tout* admits of great diversity in the french language, being either a substantive, an adjective, a pronoun or an adverb, according to the following explanations.

Rule CV.

Tout A SUBSTANTIVE.

When the english word *the whole* is not placed before a noun, it is a substantive and expressed by *le tout*, always singular and masculine as,

Le tout est plus grand que la partie.

The whole is greater than a part.

Je prendrai le tout; I will take the whole.

The word *all* or *every thing* followed by a verb, are also substantives and expressed by *tout*, but without article, Ex.

Tout est vanité en ce monde: All is vanity in this world.

Biens, dignités, honneurs, tout disparoît à la mort.

Fortune, dignities, honour, *every thing* disappears when we die.

Rule CVI.

Tout AN ADJECTIVE.

When the words *all* or *the whole* come before a substantive, they are adjectives and expressed by *tout* or *toute* for the singular, by *tous* or *toutes* for the plural: *tout* in these circumstances is always followed by the definite article *le, la, les*. Ex.

Je suis avec tout le respect possible, Monsieur &c,
I am with *all* the respect possible, Sir &c.

Toute la flotte est en mer; The whole fleet is at sea.

Note. When *tout* or *toute* stands for the word *every* placed before a substantive, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular, Exam. *

Tout homme est mortel; Every man is mortal.

Venez nous voir tous les jours; Come and see us every day.
not, tout l'homme est mortel; nor venez nous voir tous jours.

Rule CVII.

Tout A PRONOUN.

The english words *all that, every thing that* and also *what-ever* signifying *all that* are pronouns, and expressed in french by *tout ce qui* or *tout ce que*, always singular and masculine, Ex.

Tout ce que vous dites est vrai; All that you say is true.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or; It is not all gold that glitters.

Vous n'avez pas vu tout ce qu'il y avoit de curieux

You have not seen every thing that was curious.

Rule CVIII.

Tout AN ADVERB.

When the word *tout* stand for the adverbs *quite, entirely, although*, or the first *as* of a sentence where two are used, it is always indeclinable before a noun masculine, Exam.

Les philosophes tout savants qu'ils sont, se trompent quelquefois.

Philosophers as learned as they are, sometimes are mistaken.

* *We say however tout le monde for every body, and not tout monde.*

It is also indeclinable, before a noun feminine of both numbers which begins with a vowel or an *h* mute; but it is declinable before a noun feminine which begins with a consonant, and agrees with it in gender and number. Exam.

INDECLINABLE.

{ *Votre mère est tout alarmée ; vos sœurs sont tout abattues.*
 { Your mother is quite alarmed; your sisters are quite cast down.

DECLINABLE.

{ *Votre mère fut toute surprise à cette nouvelle ;*
 { Your mother was quite surprised at that news.
 { *Vos sœurs toutes riches & toutes belles qu'elles sont, ne se marient point.*
 { Your sisters as rich and handsome as they are, do not marry.

OF *Quelque*.

There are three sorts of *quelque* which must be carefully distinguished. The first comes before an adjective and is always indeclinable. The second takes an *s* when it comes before a substantive plural. The third comes before the verb *être* and is spelt in two words thus, *quel que* m. sing. *quelle que* f. *quels que* m. pl. *quelles que* f. All of them govern the verb following in the subjunctive mood. The three following rules will explain the right placing of words in those sentences where the french construction is different from the english.

Rule CIX.

Quelque INDECLINABLE.

When the english words *however*, *howsoever*, *though never so much* &c. come before an adjective, they are expressed in french by *quelque* indeclinable. The construction of the sentence is as follows. 1° *quelque* is put the first. 2° the adjective. 3° *que*. 4° the verb in the subjunctive mood. 5° the substantive, the rest as in english, Exam.

Quelque bonnes que soient vos raisons, on ne les écoutera pas.
Though your reasons are never so good, they will not be heard.

Quelque louable que soit votre conduite, elle sera condamnée.
Howsoever praise worthy your conduct may be, it will be condemned.

Rule CX.

Quelque DECLINABLE.

The english word *whatever* followed by a *substantive* and any other verb than *to be*, is an adjective and expressed by *quelque*, before a noun singular, and by *quelques* with an *s* before a noun plural. The construction is 1° *quelque*. 2° the substantive. 3° *que*. 4° the verb in the subjunctive mood, the rest as in english. Exam.

Quelque faute qu'il ait commise, je lui pardonnerai.
Whatever fault he has committed, I will forgive him.
Quelques biens que vous ayez, vous n'êtes jamais content.
Whatever fortune you have, you are never satisfied.

Rule CXI.

Quel que, Quelle que &c. IN TWO WORDS.

The English word *whatever* followed by a *substantive* and the verb *to be*, is expressed in french by *quel que* in two words for the *m. sing.* and by *quelle que* for the *f.* by *quels que* for the *m. pl.* and by *quelles que* for the *f.*

The construction is 1° *quel* or *quelle*. 2° *que*. 3° the verb in the subjunctive mood. 4° the substantive, the rest as in english. Exam.

Quelle que soit sa faute, je lui pardonnerai.
Whatever his fault may be, I will forgive him.
Quels que soient vos talens, vous ne réussirez pas sans application.
Whatever your talents may be, you will not succeed without application.

Rule CXII.

Quoi que ce soit.

The english words *whatever, whatsoever* meaning *all things soever* are expressed by *quelque chose que*, by *quoique* or *quoi-que ce soit que*, when the sentence is affirmative; and by *quoique ce soit* when negative. They all govern the subjunctive mood. Exam.

Quelque chose que, quoi que, or quoi que ce soit que vous fassiez pour moi, je vous en récompenserai.

Whatever you do for me, I will reward you for it.

Je ne me plains de quoi que ce soit; je n'ai vu quoi que ce soit.
I complain of nothing whatever; I have seen nothing whatever.

Rule CXIII.

Quiconque, Qui que ce soit.

The indeterminate pronouns *whoever, whosoever*, are most usually expressed by *quiconque* when they are in the nominative or accusative case. Exam.

Quiconque s'abandonne à ses passions, se rend malheureux.

Whoever abandons himself to his passions, renders himself unhappy.

Dieu punira quiconque transgresse ses lois.

God will punish whomsoever transgresses his laws.

They are usually expressed by *qui que ce soit*, when they are in the genitive, dative or after a preposition. Exam.

De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.

Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander.

The pronoun *nobody whatever* is also expressed by *qui que ce soit* or by *personne* almost indifferently. Exam.

Il ne se fie à personne or à qui que ce soit.

He trusts nobody whatever.

Personne or qui que ce soit ne m'a parlé contre vous.

Nobody whatever has spoken to me against you.

N. B. When the pronoun *whoever* comes immediately before you, it is expressed in french by *qui que*. Exam.

Qui que vous soyez, je ne vous crains pas.

Whoever you may be, I do not fear you.

Rule CXIV.

L'un l'autre.

The indeterminate pronouns *one another, each other* are expressed in french by *l'un l'autre* m. *l'une l'autre* f. with reference to a noun singular, and by *les uns les autres* m. *les unes les autres* f. with reference to a noun plural.

The first of these pronouns is always in the nominative in french; thus if they are preceded by a preposition in english, that preposition must be put between them in french. Exam.

Mon frère & votre sœur parlent toujours l'un de l'autre, ils pensent l'un à l'autre, ils sont faits l'un pour l'autre, ils ne sauroient vivre l'un sans l'autre.

My brother and your sister speak always of *one another* they think of *one another*, they are made for *one another*, they cannot live without *one another*.

Rule CXV.

L'un et l'autre &c. *Both, one and another.*L'un ou l'autre &c. *Either.*Ni l'un ni l'autre &c. *Neither.*

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they have reference; if they are preceded by a preposition in english, that preposition must be repeated in french before *l'un* and before *l'autre*. Exam.

Je le ferai pour l'un & pour l'autre.

I will do it for them both.

Je le ferai pour l'un ou pour l'autre.

I will do it for either.

Je ne le ferai ni pour l'un ni pour l'autre.

I will do it for neither of them.

Note. The word both followed by a substantive is expressed by *les deux*, as *je me sers des deux mains*. I use both hands. *Both* followed by *and* is a conjunction sometimes expressed by *et*, but more often left out in french. Exam. *Il est heureux et en paix et en guerre*, or *il est heureux en paix et en guerre*. He is happy both in peace and war.

Rule CXVI.

Personne Nobody.

The indeterminate pronoun *nobody* is expressed by *personne* masculine and singular. Exam.

Personne ne sait s'il est digne d'amour ou de haine.

Nobody knows whether he is worthy of love or hatred.

Vous ne plaisez à personne. You please *nobody*.

Personne is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive, thus we say:

Je ne connois personne si savant que vous. masc.

I know nobody so learned as you.

Je connois une personne aussi savante que vous. fem.

I know a person as learned as you are.

Rule CXVII.

Aucun, pas un. None.

The indeterminate pronouns *none*, *not one* are expressed in french by *pas un*, or *aucun*, almost indifferently; however *pas un* is more exclusive than *aucun*. Exam.

J'avois bien des amis, cependant pas un ne m'a secouru.

I had many friends, yet *not one* has relieved me.

Aucun de vous n'y étoit présent. None of you were there.

Rule CXVIII.

Rien Nothing.

The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien*. Exam.

Il n'y a rien de plus rare qu'un véritable ami.

Nothing is more rare than a true friend.

Je n'ai rien vu de plus beau. I have seen *nothing* finer.

Obs. From the preceding examples, that *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *personne*, *aucun*, *pas un*, and *rien* are negative pronouns which require the particle *ne* before the verb, however *aucun*, *personne*, and *rien* do not require *ne* before the verb, in a sentence interrogative or of doubt; but then *aucun* and *personne* stand for *any body*, and *rien* for *any thing*. Exam.

Y eut-il jamais personne plus éloquent que Cicéron?

Was there ever *any body* more eloquent than Cicero?

Avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus curieux?

Have you ever seen *any thing* more curious?

Je doute qu'il y ait aucun auteur sans défaut.

I question if there is *any* author without fault.

CHAPTER XII.

SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATIONS.

This chapter is divided into two sections; *the first* explains, how to express in french the english negations; *the second* shews the several circumstances in which a negative expression, is required in french though there is none in english.

SECTION I.

HOW TO EXPRESS IN FRENCH THE ENGLISH NEGATIONS.

The english negations are these eight, 1°. *nobody*, 2°. *none* or *not one*, 3°. *nothing*, 4°. *neither*, 5°. *never*, 6°. *by no means*, 7°. *no*, 8°. *not*. We have spoken in the preceding rules of the three first, therefore we will only treat here of the five others.

Rule CXIX.

NI. NI NE.

The word *neither* besides its being an indeterminate pronoun as we said before, is also a negative conjunction, when followed by *nor*. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni* and *ne* before the verb, which is in the indicative mood, Exam.

Ni prieres, ni menaces ne purent l'attendrir.

Neither prayers, nor threatening could move him.

Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.

He knows neither how to read nor write.

If these conjunctions come before two verbs in the indicative mood, *neither* is expressed by *ne* before the first, and *nor* by *ni* before the second. Exam.

Je ne vous loue, ni ne vous blâme.

I neither praise nor blame you.

Il ne vous aime, ni ne vous hait.

He neither loves nor hates you.

Rule CXX.

JAMAIS. NULLEMENT.

The word *never* is rendered by *jamais*; *by no means* is expressed by *nullement*. *Jamais* and *nullement* require *ne* before verb, without *pas* after. Exam.

Je n'ai jamais vu la Reine d'Angleterre.

I have never seen the Queen of England.

Je n'approuve nullement votre conduite.

I, by no means approve of your conduct.

Rule CXXI.

AUCUN, POINT DE, NON.

The negative expression *no* before a substantive is expressed in french by *point de* or by the adjective *aucun* m. *aucune* f. before a noun singular, and by *aucuns* m. *aucunes* f. before a noun plural. Exam.

Vous n'avez aucunes bonnes qualités or point de bonnes qualités.

You have no good qualities.

Il n'a aucun soin, ou point de soin de ses affaires.

He takes no care of his business.

When *no* is used in answer to a question, it is expressed by *non*. Exam.

Avez-vous vu le Roi? non, Monsieur.

Have you seen the King? no Sir.

Apprenez-vous le françois? non, Madame.

Do you learn french? no, Madam.

Rule CXXII.

NE PAS, NON PAS. *not.*

The negative *not* is usually expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after. Exam.

Ne lui parlez pas ; ne lui avez-vous pas parlé ?

Do not speak to him ; have you not spoken to him ?

If the verb negatively used is in the present infinitive, *ne* and *pas* are usually placed before it. Exam.

Je m'en vais pour ne pas vous déplaire.

I go away, not to displease you.

Il faut être insensé pour ne pas voir qu'il a tort.

One must be a fool, not to perceive, that he is in the wrong.

The word *not* followed by *that*, is expressed by *non que* or *non pas que*. Exam.

Je le ferai non que ou non pas que j'y sois obligé, mais pour avoir la paix.

I will do it, not that I am obliged to it, but to have peace.

Rule CXXIII.

NE. *not.*

The negative *not* is expressed by *ne* without *pas* or *point* with these four verbs *cesser* to cease, *oser* to dare, *pouvoir* to be able, and *savoir* for to be able. Exam.

Il ne cesse de se plaindre.

He does not cease complaining.

Je n'ose lui parler. I dare not speak to him.

Je ne puis marcher. I cannot walk.

Vous ne sauriez le refuser. You cannot refuse him.

Note. The words *no more* or *not any more* are expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *pas plus* after, when *more* is followed by *than* ; they are expressed by *plus* without *pas*, when *more* is not followed by *than*. Exam.

Je n'ai pas plus de vingt ans.

I am no more than twenty years of age.

Il n'y a pas plus de huit jours que j'ai vu votre frère ; vous ne le verrez plus.

It is *no more than* a week, since I saw your brother; you will see him *no more*.

Rule CXXIV.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN *pas* AND *point*.

1°. *Point* is more exclusive than *pas*. The first denies absolutely and signifies *not at all*. The second denies sometimes but in part. Exam.

Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables.

Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables.

All the accused persons are not guilty.

The first sentence signifies that none of the accused are guilty, and the second that the accused are not all guilty. See Wailly pag. 309.

2°. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of the thing in question, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it. Exam.

N'avez-vous point vu mon frère aujourd'hui.

N'avez-vous pas vu mon frère aujourd'hui.

Have you not seen my brother to day.

In the first sentence I doubt, if you have seen my brother or not; in the second I am persuaded you have seen him.

3°. We make use of *point* to denote that a thing happens never or very seldom, and of *pas* to denote that it does not happen in the time we are speaking, though it may happen very often. Exam.

Vous n'étudiez point. Vous n'étudiez pas.

You do not study.

The first sentence signifies that habitually you do not study, and the second that you do not study at present, though you may be very studious.

N. B. This distinction though very exact and conformable to the practice of the best french authors, is not always observed, even by French-men, and I must confess, there are many circumstances in which they can be almost indifferently used.

SECTION THE SECOND.

NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS IN FRENCH AND NOT IN ENGLISH.

Rule CXXV.

The particle *ne* is used in french after the following words *plus* more, *mieux* better, *moins* less, *pire* worst, *plutôt* sooner, *autre*, *autrement* otherwise; in all these cases there is no negative expression in english. Exam. *

Voire frère est plus jeune que je ne pensois.

Your brother is younger than I thought.

Vous êtes venu plutôt qu'on ne vous attendoit.

You are come sooner than you were expected.

Rule CXXVI.

The particle *ne* is used after these four verbs, *apprehender*, *avoir peur* to be afraid, *craindre* to fear, and *empêcher* to hinder, when they are affirmatively used; but not when negatively; thus with these verbs, there is always a negation in the sentence, and never two. Exam.

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous fasse tort. Je n'empêcherai pas qu'il vous fasse tort.

I will hinder him from doing you wrong. I will not hinder him from injuring you.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne; Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.

I fear he will come; I do not fear he will come.

Nier to deny, and *douter* to doubt on the contrary require *ne* before the next verb when they are negatively used; but not when affirmatively; thus with *nier* and *douter* there are two negations in the sentence, or none. Exam.

Je doute qu'il soit arrivé; Je ne doute pas qu'il ne soit arrivé.

I doubt whether he is come; I do not doubt that he is come.

* *Ne should be left out, if the verb was in the infinitive mood, or if there was a conjunction between que and the verb, as we said before in the second note of rule 40.*

Rule CXXVII.

The five following conjunctions *à moins que* unless, *de crainte que* for fear, *de peur que* lest, *si* used for unless, and *que* for before or untill, require the particle *ne* before the next verb. Exam.

Je n'y irai pas, à moins que vous ne veniez avec moi.

I will not go there, unless you come with me.

Je ne vous donnerai pas de montre, que vous ne parliez françois.

I will not give you a watch, untill you speak french.

Obs. That all the verbs and conjunctions mentioned in these two rules, govern the verb in the subjunctive mood (*si* excepted.)

Rule CXXVIII.

When *but* and *only* come after a verb without any stop between them, they are expressed by *ne* before it, and *que* after. Exam.

Je n'ai que vingt guinées. I have but twenty guineas.

Je n'ai qu'un véritable ami. I have but one true friend.

The word *only* after a verb is expressed by *seulement*, if there is before a conditional expression as, *si vous aviez seulement deux amis de plus, vous réussiriez.* If you had only two friends more, you would succeed. When *but* begins the second part of a sentence, it is usually expressed by *mais*.

Exam. *Je voudrais bien voyager, mais je n'ai pas d'argent.* I could wish to travel, but I have no money.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

The verb is a part of speech the most extensive, the most essential and altogether the most difficult either to teach or to learn; therefore a serious attention must be given to the following pages, in which the construction of verbs is fully explained, and the different genius of the two languages is pointed out with accuracy and precision.

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

Rule CXXIX.

Verbs which govern the genitive case.

1°. Most of the reflected verbs not mentioned in the next rule, govern the genitive in french whatever case they govern in english, Exam.

<i>S'appercevoir d'un tour.</i>	To perceive a trick.
<i>S'emparer de quelque chose.</i>	To seize upon some thing.
<i>S'enquérir de nouvelles.</i>	To inquire about news.
<i>Se ressouvenir d'une histoire.</i>	To remember an history.
And so on for others.	

2°. The following *abuser* to abuse, *avoir besoin* to want, *avoir pitié* to pity, *être altéré* to thirst after, *hériter* to inherit, *jouir* to enjoy, *manquer* to want, *médire* to traduce, *rendre raison* to account for, *rougir* to blush, *user* to use, govern the genitive in french; thus we say:

<i>Avoir besoin d'argent.</i>	To want money.
<i>Avoir pitié des malheureux.</i>	To pity the unfortunate.
<i>Hériter d'un gros bien.</i>	To inherit a large fortune.
<i>Jouir d'une bonne santé.</i>	To enjoy a good health.
<i>Médire de son prochain.</i>	To traduce one's neighbour.
And so on for others.	

3°. The verbs passive followed by the Prepositions *of*, *from*, or *with* govern the genitive case. Exam.

<i>Il est chargé de butin.</i>	He is loaded with spoil.
<i>Ce livre est traduit de l'Anglois.</i>	This book is translated from the English.

4°. The word *by*, which comes sometimes after a verb passive is usually expressed by *de*, when the verb does not express any action of the body, and by *par* when it does; thus we say.

<i>Votre frère a été tué par deux voleurs.</i>	Your brother has been killed by two thieves.
--	--

Votre sœur est estimée de tout le monde.

Your sister is esteemed by every body.

However we make use of *par* to avoid the repetition of *des*, though the verb does not express any action of the body, Ex.

Votre ouvrage sera censuré d'une manière sévère par les critiques, not *des critiques*. Your work will be severely censured by criticks.

Rule CXXX.

VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE DATIF CASE.

1°. The twenty two following reflected verbs govern the dative.

S'abandonner à,	To abandon one's self.
S'accoutumer à,	To accustom one's self.
S'adonner à,	To addict one's self.
S'amuser à,	To amuse one's self.
S'appliquer à,	To apply one's self.
S'apprêter à,	To dispose one's self.
S'arrêter à,	To stop.
S'attacher à,	To stick to.
S'adresser à,	To apply one's self.
Se déterminer à,	To resolve upon.
Se disposer à,	To prepare one's self.
S'endurcir à,	To inure one's self.
S'engager à,	To engage.
S'exposer à,	To expose one's self.
Se fier à,	To trust.
S'habituer à,	To accustom one's self.
S'obstiner à,	To be determined.
S'opiniâtrer à,	To be determined.
S'occuper à,	To employ one's self.
S'opposer à,	To oppose one's self.
Se plaire à,	To take delight in.
Se préparer à,	To prepare one's self. Exam.
<i>Accoutumez-vous à l'étude.</i> Accustom yourself to study.	
<i>Je m'applique aux mathématiques.</i> I apply myself to mathematics.	
<i>Ne vous arrêtez pas à Londres.</i> Do not stop in London.	

2°. The following verbs govern the dative in french whatever case they govern in english.

Consentir	à,	to consent.	Penser	à,	to think of.
Contrevenir	à,	to infringe.	Plaire	à,	to please.
Contribuer	à,	to contribute.	Renoncer	à,	to renounce.
Déplaire	à,	to displease.	Remédier	à,	to remedy.
Désobéir	à,	to disobey.	Ressembler	à,	to resemble.
Nuire	à,	to hurt.	Résister	à,	to resist.
Obéir	à,	to obey.	Songer	à,	to think of.
Obvier	à,	to obviate.	Subvenir	à,	to relieve.
Pardonner	à,	to forgive.	Succéder	à,	to succeed.
Parvenir	à,	to attain.	Survivre	à,	to out live.

Exam..

Déplaire à son maître.	To displease one's master.
Ne désobéissez pas à vos parents.	Do not disobey your parents
Je pardonne à mes ennemis.	I forgive my enemies.
Il plait à tout le monde.	He pleases every body.
Je pense à votre affaire.	I think of your business.
And so on for others.	

3°. The following *applaudir*, to applaud, *insulter* to insult, *persuader* to persuade, *renoncer* to renounce, *rêver* to dream, *travailler* to work, govern sometimes the accusative case, but most frequently the dative, thus we say.

Vous insultez tout le monde. Acc. *Vous insultez à ma misère.*
Dat.

You insult every body. You insult my misfortune.

Rule. CXXXI

VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

All verbs which can be turned by the passive voice, govern the accusative in french. Thus for instance, I know that *aimer*, *estimer*, *punir*, *récompenser* &c, govern the Acc. because we can say, *il est aimé*, *il est estimé*, *il est puni* &c.

By the same reason I know that the following verbs,

Accepter,	to accept of.	bloquer,	to block up.
abattre,	to pull down.	chercher,	to look for.
admirer,	to wonder at.	combler,	to fill up.
approuver,	to approve of.	critiquer,	to cavil at.
attendre,	to wait for.	déchirer,	to tear of.

demander,	to ask for.	huer,	to hoot at.
dénoncer,	to inform against.	injurier,	to rail at.
déraciner,	to root out.	juger,	to judge off.
examiner.	to examine into.	lorgner,	to leer on.
époudrer,	to wipe off.	paraphrafer,	to comment upon.
regarder,	to look at.		

and some others which are attended by a preposition in english, govern the accusative in french, because they can be turned by the passive, and we can say for instance :

Votre offre a été acceptée. Your offer has been accepted.

Cet arbre a été abattu. This tree has been pulled down.

Votre conduite a été approuvée.

Your conduct has been approved.

And so on for others.

Rule CXXXII.

VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE CASES.

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, not joined by a conjunction, the first is put in the accusative and the second in the genitive case.

Abfoudre,	to abject.	dissuader,	to dissuade.
accabler,	to overwhelm.	emplir,	to fill.
accepter,	to accept.	enfreindre,	to transgress.
accuser,	to accuse.	exclure,	to exclude.
avertir,	to warn.	expulser,	to turn out.
bannir,	to banish.	fléchir,	to move.
blâmer,	to blame.	implorer,	to implore.
chasser,	to expell.	informer,	to inform.
corriger,	to correct.	louer,	to praise.
débusquer,	to drive out.	ménacer,	to threaten.
délivrer,	to free.	obtenir,	to obtain.
dégoûter,	to disgust.	recevoir,	to receive.
détourner,	to divert.	priver,	to deprive.
soupçonner,	to suspect.		

Accabler un ennemi d'injures.

To load an enemy with injuries.

Accepter les offres d'un ami. To accept the offers of a friend.

Emplir une bouteille de vin. To fill a bottle with wine.

Exclure un menteur de la société.
To exclude a liar from society.

Rule CXXXIII.

VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND
DATIVE CASES.

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, that which has reference to persons, is to be put in the dative in french, and the other in the accusative. If they have both reference to persons, that before which the preposition *to* is or could be prefixed, is put in the dat. and the other in the acc. No verb governs two accusatives in french.

Accorder,	<i>to grant.</i>	expliquer,	<i>to explain.</i>
adresser;	<i>to direct.</i>	ôter,	<i>to take away.</i>
annoncer,	<i>to announce.</i>	pardonner,	<i>to forgive.</i>
apporter,	<i>to bring.</i>	prédire,	<i>to foretell.</i>
attribuer,	<i>to attribute.</i>	préférer,	<i>to prefer.</i>
avouer,	<i>to own.</i>	présenter,	<i>to present.</i>
communiquer,	<i>to communicate.</i>	prêter,	<i>to lend.</i>
confesser,	<i>to confess.</i>	procurer,	<i>to procure.</i>
confier,	<i>to trust.</i>	promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
conseiller.	<i>to advise.</i>	raconter.	<i>to relate.</i>
déclarer,	<i>to declare.</i>	rapporter,	<i>to bring back.</i>
dédier,	<i>to dedicate,</i>	rendre,	<i>to return.</i>
demander,	<i>to ask.</i>	refuser,	<i>to refuse.</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>	renvoyer,	<i>to send back.</i>
dire,	<i>to tell.</i>	répéter,	<i>to repeat.</i>
donner,	<i>to give.</i>	réprocher,	<i>to reproach.</i>
écrire,	<i>to write.</i>	répondre,	<i>to answer.</i>
enseigner,	<i>to teach.</i>	révéler,	<i>to reveal.</i>
envoyer,	<i>to send.</i>	vendre,	<i>to sell.</i>
épargner,	<i>to avoid.</i>		

Accordez lui cette grace. Grant him that favour.

Dites moi la vérité. Tell me the truth.

Demander permission au maître. To beg the master's leave.

Réprocher une faute à quelqu'un.

To reproach one with a fault.

And so on for all others.

OBSERVATIONS.

Jouer governs the genitive, when it signifies *to play* on some musical instruments, and the dative, when it signifies *to play* at some game. Exam.

Vous jouez bien du violon, mais vous ne jouez pas bien aux cartes.

You play well on the violon, but you do not play well at cards.

Some verbs are followed in french by a preposition different from that used in english; such are:

Cracher sur quelqu'un. To spit *at* one.

Faire feu sur l'ennemi. To fire *at* the enemy.

S'ingérer dans les affaires des autres.

To intermeddle *with* other people's business.

Lutter contre la mort. To struggle *with* death.

Tirer sur un lièvre. To shoot *at* a hare. And some others. *

Most of verbs which govern the genitive or ablative in latin, govern the genitive in french; and most of those which govern the acc. or dat. in latin require the same case in french.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

As there are three tenses in the infinitive mood, called, *présent*, *gerund* and *participle*, this chapter is naturally divided into three sections: *The first* describes the circumstances in which a verb is put in the infinitive mood without being preceded by any preposition; it explains also the cases in which it is preceded by *de*, by *à*, or by *pour*. *The second* teaches that a gerund is always indeclinable in french, and gives an easy method to distinguish it from a verbal adjective, which is always declinable; *The third* establishes two general rules which explain when a participle is declinable or indeclinable.

* *These verbs are followed by the same preposition in all their tenses..*

SECTION I.

OF THE INFINITIVE PRESENT.

The infinitive present is sometimes used in french, without any preposition before it; it is sometimes preceded by *de*, sometimes by *à*, sometimes by *pour*, according to the following rules.

Rule CXXXIV

Infinitive without preposition.

A verb in the infinitive present, has no preposition before it

1°. When it is substantively used, and is the nominative case of another verb. Exam.

Trop parler, est dangereux.

To speak too much, is dangerous.

Secourir les pauvres, est une action digne de louange.

To relieve the poor, is praise-worthy action.

2°. When it is governed in the infinitive by any of the following verbs,

aller,	to go.	nier,	to deny.
croire,	to believe.	oser,	to dare.
daigner,	to deign.	paraître,	to appear.
déclarer,	to declare.	prétendre,	to pretend.
desirer,	to wish.	pouvoir,	to be able.
devoir,	to owe.	savoir,	to know.
entendre,	to hear.	sembler,	to appear.
envoyer,	to send.	souhaiter,	to wish.
espérer,	to hope.	soutenir,	to maintain.
faire,	to do.	voir,	to see.
falloir,	to be requisite.	vouloir,	to be willing.
laisser,	to let.		

Allez voir votre ami ; Go and see your friend.

Croyez-vous avoir raison ;

Do you believe you are in the right.

Daignez me répondre ; Deign to answer me.

Je ferai exécuter vos ordres.

I will cause your orders be executed.
and so on for others.

Note. The verb *faire* is used for *to do, to make, to cause, and to oblige*, in all cases it is immediately followed in french by the next verb, which it governs in the infinitive without preposition as, *Je ferai bâtir une maison. Je vous ferai faire votre thème.*

Rule CXXXV.

INFINITIVE WITH *de*.

We put the preposition *de* before a verb in the infinitive mood

1° Most commonly when it is preceded by a *substantive* which governs it. Exam. *

Il est temps de partir : It is time to set out.

Vous n'avez pas sujet d'être fuché contre moi.

You have no cause to be angry with me.

2° most commonly when it is preceded by the verb *être* and any other adjectives than those mentioned in the next rule. Exam.

Il est glorieux de pardonner à ses ennemis.

It is glorious to forgive one's enemies.

Il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.

It is dangerous to trust every body.

3° Most commonly when it is governed by any other reflected verbs than those mentioned in the next rule, Exam.

Je me repents d'en avoir parlé.

I am sorry I have spoke of it.

Il se propose d'aller vous voir.

He has a mind to go and see you.

* I could have given the exceptions to these rules, because they are not numerous ; but I have been dissuaded from doing it, by several french masters whom I have consulted.

4° When it is governed in the infinitive by any of the following verbs.

accuser de,	to accuse.	mériter de,	to deserve.
affecter de,	to affect.	négliger de,	to neglect.
avertir de,	to advise.	offrir de,	to offer.
blâmer de,	to blame.	omettre de,	to omit.
cesser de,	to cease.	ordonner de,	to order.
commander de,	to command.	oublier de,	to forget.
conjurér de,	to intreat.	parler de,	to speak.
conseiller de,	to advise.	permettre de,	to permit.
craindre de,	to fear.	persuader de,	to persuade.
détourner de,	to deter.	plaindre de,	to pity.
deffendre de,	to forbid.	presser de,	to urge.
differer de,	to differ.	prescrire de,	to prescribe.
dire de,	to tell.	prier de,	to pray.
dispenser de,	to excuse.	promettre de,	to promise.
dissuader de,	to dissuade.	proposer de,	to propose.
écrire de,	to write.	refuser de,	to refuse.
empêcher de,	to hinder.	remercier de,	to thank.
enjoindre de,	to enjoin.	resoudre de,	to resolve.
entreprendre de,	to undertake.	sommer de,	to summon.
essayer de,	to try.	soupçonner de,	to suspect.
feindre de,	to feign.	supplier de,	to beg.
finir de,	to finish.	tâcher de,	to endeavour.
menacer de,	to threaten.		

Il ne cesse de se plaindre; He does not cease complaining.

Je vous conseille de rester ici; I advise you to stay here.

Je vous prie de lui pardonner; I beg of you to forgive him.
and so on for all others.

Rule CXXXVI.

INFINITIVE WITH à.

We put most commonly the preposition *à* before an infinitive 1° after the adjectives which denote inclination, aptness, fitness, unfitness or repugnancy, and particularly after the 26 following.

adroit à	dexterous in.	ardent à	eager in.
affreux à	dreadful to.	assidu à	assiduous in.
agréable à	agreeable to.	beau à	fine to.
aisé à	easy to.	bon à	good to.

charmant à	charming to.	lent à	slow in.
curieux à	curious to.	porté à	inclined to.
diligent à	diligent in.	le premier à	the first to
disposé à	disposed to.	le dernier à	the last to.
désagréable à	disagreeable to.	prêt à	ready to.
enclin à	inclined to.	prompt à	quick in.
exact à	exact in.	propre à	fit for.
facile à	easy to,	sujet à	liable to.
habile à	skilful in.	terrible à	dreadful to. Ex.

Vous êtes adroit à tout faire.

You are dextrous in doing every thing.

Je suis disposé à vous obliger ; I am disposed to oblige you.

Ce fruit est bon à manger ; That fruit is good to eat.

And so on for others.

The following verbs govern the infinitive with *à*

admettre à	to admit.	employer à	to employ.
accoutumer à	to accustom.	encourager à	to encourage.
aider à	to help.	engager à	to engage.
aimer à	to like.	exhorter à	to exhort.
apprendre à	to learn.	inviter à	to invite.
autoriser à	to authorise.	penser à	to think of.
condamner à	to condemn.	persister à	to persist in.
chercher à	to endeavour.	porter à	to induce to.
consister à	to consist.	pousser à	to excite to.
disposer à	to dispose to.	rester à	to stay.
donner à	to give.	travailler à	to work. Ex.

Ne vous accoutumez pas à jouer ;

Do not accustom yourself to play.

J'apprends à danser. J'aime à chanter.

I learn to dance. I like to sing &c.

3°. The reflected verbs *s'abandonner*, *s'accoutumer*, *s'adonner* and others mentioned before rule 130, govern the infinitive with the preposition *à*. Exam.

Ne vous accoutumez pas à jouer.

Do not accustom yourself to play.

4°. A verb is most frequently put in the infinitive with *à*, when it comes after the verb *avoir* and a substantive, or an adverb signifying a thing to be done. Exam.

Je n'ai point d'argent à prêter. I have no money to lend.

Rule CXXXVII.

INFINITIVE WITH *de* OR *à*

The verb *manquer* governs usually the infinitive with *de*, when it is negatively used, and with *à* when affirmatively. Exam.

Je ne manquerai pas de vous punir, si vous manquez à faire votre devoir.

I will not fail to punish you, if you neglect to do your exercise.

Tarder governs the infinitive with *de*, when it signifies to long, and with *à*, when it signifies to delay. Exam.

Il me tarde de voir votre frère. Il tarde bien à venir.

I long to see your brother. He delays a long time to come.

Venir governs the infinitive without preposition, when it signifies to come; it governs the infinitive with *de*, when it signifies a thing just happened, and with *à*, when it signifies to happen. Exam.

Venez me voir demain. Come and see me to morrow.

Mon père vient de sortir. My father is just gone out.

S'il vient à pleuvoir, vous serez mouillé.

If it happens to rain, you will be wet.

The following *commencer*, *continuer*, *contraindre*, *engager*, *exhorter*, *forcer*, *s'efforcer*, *obliger* and *tâcher* govern the infinitive with *de* or *à* according as it sounds better. See Wailly page 233.

Rule CXXXVIII.

INFINITIVE WITH *pour*.

We use in french the preposition *pour* before an infinitive to express the end, the design or the cause for which a thing is done, and in general every time the sentence could be turned by *in order* without altering the sense of it. Exam.

Je suis venu pour vous voir. I am come to see you,

Je ferai tout pour vous obliger.

I will do every thing to oblige you.

Les hommes sont nés pour vivre en société.

Men are born to live in society.

The preposition *pour* is also used after the words *assez* enough, *trop* too much, *suffire* and *suffisant*, to be sufficient
Exam.

Vous êtes assez grand pour être soldat, mais vous êtes trop lâche pour vous engager.

You are tall enough to be a soldier, but you are too great a coward to enlist.

Note. When the preposition *for* comes before a gerund, it is expressed in french by *pour* with the infinitive present, if the verb has reference to a present or future time, and with the compound of the present, if it refers to a past time.
Exam.

Combien me demandez-vous pour me faire un habit.

How much do you ask for making me a suit of cloth,

Il fut pendu pour avoir volé. He was hang'd for robbing.

Rule CXXXIX.

INFINITIVE WITH *sans*.

An english gerund preceded by the preposition *without*, is rendered in french by the infinitive present with *sans*.
Exam.

On ne peut trahir la vérité sans se rendre coupable.

One cannot betray the truth without being guilty.

Nous ne devons rien entreprendre sans avoir consulté Dieu, & imploré son assistance divine.

We should never undertake any thing without having consulted the will of God, and implored his divine assistance.

SECTION THE SECOND.

OF THE GERUND.

All gerunds end in *ant* in french and are indeclinable; many adjectives derived from verbs end also in *ant* and are declinable; the following rule teaches how to distinguish them.

Rule CXL.

A word ending in english in (*ing*) and in (*ant*) in french, is an adjective, when it precedes the substantive in english, and a gerund, when it comes after; in the first case it agrees in french with the substantive to which it is joined, it is indeclinable in the second. Exam.

- Decl. { *Une dame obligeante.* An obliging lady.
Une preuve convainquante. A convincing proof.
Des brebis bêlantes. Bleating sheep.
Des effets surprenants. Surprising effects.
Indecl. { *Une dame obligeant ses amis* not obligeante.
A lady obliging her friends.
Une preuve convainquant tout le monde.
A proof convincing every body.

You may observe from the preceding examples that a word ending in (*ant*) in french is an adjective, when it qualifies the substantive to which it is joined, and a gerund, when it governs a noun.

Rule CXLI.

When an english gerund has reference to a substantive which is not in the nominative case, it is rendered in french by a verb in the indicative mood. Exam.

Alexandre demanda aux medecins qui se tenoient au tour de lui, s'il mourroit de sa maladie; not aux medecins se tenant.

Alexander asked the physicians *standing* by him, if he should die of his illness.

Rule CXLII.

An english gerund preceded by the preposition *by* is always rendered in french by the infinitive with *en*, Exam.

Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices.

We have obtained peace *by making* great sacrifices.

On acquiere plus de gloire en defendant qu'en accusant ses concitoyens.

More glory is acquired *by defending* than *by accusing* one's fellow citizens.

Note 1°. An english gerund preceded by the prepositions *of, from, without, after, for* &c. is put in french in the infinitive with *de, à, pour, or sans*, as we have before rules 135 and following.

Note 2°. An english gerund preceded by the verb *to be* is put in french in the same tense of the indicative, as is the verb *to be* which is not expressed. Exam.

Je parle. I am speaking. *Je dansois.* I was dancing.

Que faites-vous ici? What are you doing here?

Note 3°. An english gerund preceded by the definite article *the* is rendered by a substantive in french. Exam.

L'étude des langues est difficile.

The learning of languages is difficult.

SECTION THE THIRD,

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

Rule CXLIII.

Participle declinable in french.

A participié is always declinable in french as an adjective,

1° When it is joined to a substantive and when it comes after any other verb than *avoir* or *être*. Exam.

Un livre bien écrit. Une lettre bien écrite.

A book well written. A letter well written.

Votre père paroît affligé. Votre mère paroît affligée.

Your father appear afflicted. Your mother appear &c.

2° After the verb *être* not preceded by a personal pronoun in the dative case. Exam.

Mon frère est fatigué. Ma sœur est fatiguée.

My brother is tired. My sister is tired.

Vos filles se sont appliquées à l'étude.

Your daughters have applied themselves to study.

3° after the verb *avoir*, when the noun or pronoun antecedent is governed by the participle, which is known when it could be put immediately after, giving the sentence another turn, Exam.

La terre que j'ai vendue est bonne.

The farm which I have *sold* is a good one.

Les livres que j'ai achetés sont très bons.

The books I have *bought* are very good.

Les règles que j'ai expliquées sont difficiles.

The rules which I have *explained* are difficult.

The participle agrees in these examples with the nouns *terre*, *livres* and *règles* which are governed by it, since they can be placed immediately after, giving the sentence another turn; for we can say, *j'ai vendu une terre, j'ai acheté des livres, j'ai expliqué des règles.*

Rule CXLIV.

PARTICIPLE INDECLINABLE AFTER *être*.

The participle is indeclinable after the verb *être* preceded by the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, in the dative case. These pronouns are in the dative, when they can be turned by *à moi*, *à toi*, *à lui* &c. Exam.

Mes sœurs se sont proposé d'aller vous voir, not proposées

My sisters have proposed to go and see you.

Votre mère s'est rompu le bras, not rompue.

Your mother has broke her arm.

PARTICIPLE INDECLINABLE AFTER *avoir*.

The participle is indeclinable after *avoir* in three cases.

1° When the noun or pronoun antecedent is not governed by the participle, but by the verb following, which is known when giving the sentence another turn, the noun antecedent come after the infinitive and not after the participle, Ex.

La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter est neuve.

The house which I have *advised* you to buy is a new one.

Les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer sont faciles.

The rules which I have *begun* to explain are easy.

The participles *conseillé* and *commencé* are indeclinable, because we can say, *acheter une maison* and not *conseiller une maison*. &c.

2° When it governs a noun or a pronoun after it, Exam.

Votre mère a parlé au Roi, not parlée.

Your mother has spoken to the King.

Vos sœurs ont appris le françois, not apprises.

Your sisters have learnt french.

3° When there is no other noun or pronoun antecedent than the nominative of the verb, Exam.

Il a étudié. Elle a chanté. Elles ont écouté.

He has studied. She has sung. They have listened.

CONCORD OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

Rule CXLV.

All the personal verbs agree in numbers and persons with their nominative case, Exam.

Je donne; Nous donnons. I give; We give.

Mon père est mort; Mes frères sont morts.

My father is dead; My brothers are dead.

Rule CXLVI.

When a verb has several nominative cases of different persons, it is put in the plural of the most worthy person. The first person is more worthy than the second, and the second is more worthy than the third.

The verb takes then for its nominative case a personal pronoun of the most worthy person, besides those used in english, Exam.

Mon frère & moi, nous allons ce soir à la comédie.

My brother and I will go to night to the play.

Vous & votre sœur, vous resterez à la maison.

You and your sister will stay at home.

A verb is put in the third person plural, in both languages, when it has for its nominative case two substantives singular joined by a copulative conjunction, Exam.

Homere & Virgile sont les princes des Poëtes.

Homer and Virgil are the princes of Poets.

Le papier & l'encre ne valent rien.

The paper and ink are good for nothing.

Rule CXLVII.

The pronoun *qui* requires the verb following in the same number and person as the substantive or pronoun antecedent Exam.

C'est moi qui l'ai vu; It is I who have seen him.

C'est lui qui l'a fait; It is he who has done it.

C'est vous qui en avez parlé;

It is you who have spoken of it.

Ce sont eux qui l'ont pris; It is they who have taken it.

OBSERVATIONS.

1°. When the English address God, they put the pronoun and verb in the singular; the French on the contrary put them in the second person plural in prose. Exam.

Notre père qui êtes aux cieux, votre nom soit sanctifié &c.

Our father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name &c.

2°. The pronouns and verbs are usually put in the second person plural in both languages, when we speak to one person, but the adjective, if there is any, remains in the singular. Exam.

Monsieur, vous êtes très obligeant. Sir, you are very obliging.

3°. The third person is elegantly used instead of the second, when we speak to persons for whom we have some consideration. Exam.

Madame veut-elle venir au parc.

Madam, will you come to the park.

4°. The second person singular is often used in French, between intimate friends, and also between brothers and sisters, husband and wife &c.

5°. The poets and orators use the second person singular, when they address God, Heroes or Sovereigns. Exam.

Grand Dieu, tes jugements sont remplis d'équité.

Toujours tu prends plaisir à nous être propice.

Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais ta bonté

Ne me pardonnera qu'en blessant ta justice.

Où, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété
 Ne laisse à ton pouvoir que le choix du supplice.
 Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,
 Et ta clémence même attend que je périsse.
 Contente ton désir, puisqu'il t'est glorieux,
 Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux:
 Tonne, frappe, il est temps, rends-moi guerre pour guerre.
 J'adore en périssant la raison qui t'aigrit.
 Mais dessus quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre,
 Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jesus-Christ.

Sonnet de Desbarreaux.

CHAPTER XV.

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Rule CXLVIII.

OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.

The present of the indicative as *je parle* I speak, *je fais* I do, *je reçois* I receive &c. is used in french

1°. To express a thing which is present in the time we are speaking. Exam.

Il pleut, it rains. *Je suis malade*, I am sick.

2°. To express a thing which we do habitually, though not in the moment in which we are speaking. Exam.

J'apprends le françois. I learn french.

Vous allez souvent à la comédie. You go often to the play.

3°. To express a thing which is of eternal truth. Exam.

Dieu est miséricordieux. God is merciful.

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortals.

4°. To express in a more lively and emphatical manner, a thing happened in a time quite past. Exam.

J'ai vu votre frère entraîné par ses chevaux, il veut les rappeler, sa voix les effraie, ils courent, tout son corps n'est qu'une plaie.

I have seen your brother dragged-away by his horses, he called to them to stop, his cries frightened them, they ran on, till his body was but one wound.

5°. To express a future time not distant, when there is in the sentence a word which denotes futurity. Exam.

Je parts ce soir pour Londres.

I shall set out to night for London.

Je suis prêt dans un moment. I shall be ready in a moment.

Rule CXLIX.

IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

The imperfect of the indicative, as *je parlois*, I did speak ; *je recevois*, I did receive &c. is used in french

1°. To express a thing which is past in the time we are speaking, but which was present when another thing mentioned in the same sentence happened. The verb which is or could be rendered in english, by the gerund with *was* or *were*, is invariably put in the imperfect in french, and the other most commonly in the preterite. Exam.

Je vous écrivois une lettre, quand je reçus la vôtre.

I was writing you a letter, when I received yours.

Nous dînions, quand nous apprîmes cette fâcheuse nouvelle.

We were dining, when we learnt that sad news.

2°. To express the inclinations, habits, customs, manners, professions, titles, good or bad qualities of the nations, or of the particular individuals we are speaking of, when they are dead, and there is no specification of time in the sentence. Exam.

Les Romains cultivoient les arts, encourageoient les sciences, & récompensoit le mérite.

The Romans cultivated the arts, encouraged sciences, and rewarded merit.

Nos ancêtres alloient tous les jours à la chasse, & ne vivoient que de gibier.

Our ancestors went a hunting every day, and lived upon game.

César étoit un grand général. Cicéron étoit un grand orateur.

Cesar was a great general. Cicero was a great orator.

Louis Seize étoit un bon Roi.

Lewis the sixteenth was a good king.

3°. If the persons are living, we use the imperfect, when the time is determined, and the compound of the present, when it is not. Exam.

Voire mère étoit belle avant de se marier.

Your mother was handsome before she married.

Voire père a couru de grands dangers.

Your father has been exposed to great dangers.

Quand j'étois jeune, j'allois souvent à la comédie.

When I was young, I used to go to the play.

Rule CL.

PRETERITE OF THE INDICATIVE.

The preterite of the indicative, as *je parlai*, I spoke; *je fis*, I did; *je reçus*, I received &c. is used in french to express a particular fact or event, which has happened but once or very seldom, and in a time quite past. Exam.

Les Romains chassèrent Tarquin de Rome.

The Romans expelled Tarquinius from Rome.

César fut tué dans le Sénat. Cicéron eut la tête tranchée.

Cesar was killed in the Senate.

Cicero had his head cut off.

J'allai hier voir voire père.

I went yesterday to see your father.

Rule CLI.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present, as *j'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *j'ai fait*, I have done; *j'ai reçu*, I have received &c. is used in french to express a thing past, but in a time not quite elapsed. A time is not elapsed, when the pronoun *this* or *our* are or could be prefixed to the words *age*, *year*, *month*, *week* or *day* mentioned in the sentence. Exam.

Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes. Not produit, nor produisoit.

Our age has produced great men.

Nous avons eu beaucoup de compagnie cet hiver. Not nous eûmes.

We had much company this winter.

OBSERVATIONS.

From the three preceding rules, it appears that a verb which is in the imperfect in english, may sometimes be put in three different tenses in french.

1°. In the *imperfect* when it expresses a thing habitual, or which was present when an other thing happened. Exam.

Quand j'étois à la campagne, je me promenois souvent.

When I was in the country, I walked often.

J'étois malade quand vous êtes venu.

I was sick when you are come.

2°. In the *preterite* when it denotes a particular fact which happened in a time quite past. A time is past when the pronouns *this* or *our* could not be prefixed to it. Exam.

Je me promenai hier.

I walked yesterday.

Je fus malade la semaine dernière. I was sick last week.

3°. In the *compound of the present*, when the time is not quite past. Exam.

Je me suis promené ce matin.

I walked this morning.

J'ai été bien malade cette semaine.

I was very sick this week.

Rule CLII.

FUTURE OF THE INDICATIVE.

The future of the indicative as, *je parlerai, je ferai, je recevrai* &c. is used in french as in english, to express a future time. Exam.

Nos corps ressusciteront au jour du jugement.

Our bodies will rise again in the day of judgment.

The English use often the present tense, or at least leave out the mark of the future after the conjunctions *when, as soon as, or after* when they want to express a thing to come; the future must be used in french. Exam.

Aussitôt que j'aurai dîné, je sortirai.

As soon as, I have dined, I will go out.

Vous jouerez quand vous aurez fini votre thème.

You will play, when you have finished your exercise.

Rule CLIII.

CONDITIONAL TENSE.

The conditional tense as, *je parlerois*, I would speak; *je ferois*, I would do; *je recevrais*, I would receive &c which some Grammarians call the imperfect of the subjunctive, is used in french as in english, to express a conditional sentence.

Exam.

Nous serions heureux si nous savions fixer nos desirs.

We would be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires.

Quand vous seriez riche, vous ne seriez pas plus heureux.

Though you would be rich, yet you would not be more happy.

When the conjunction *si* signifies *whether*, the future and conditional are used after it in french as in english. Exam.

Je ne sais s'il fera beau tems demain.

I do not know *if* or *whether* it will be good weather to morrow.

Je doute si mon frère viendrait, si je l'en priois.

I doubt *if* or *whether* my brother would come, should I desire him of it.

But when the conjunction *si* signifies *suppose that*, the english future must be rendered in french by the present, and the conditional by the imperfect. Exam.

Vous deviendrez savant, si vous étudiez bien. Not si vous étudirez.

You will become a learned man, if you will study well.

Je deviendrais riche, si je continuois mon commerce. Not si je continuerois.

I would become rich, if I would continue my trade.

Rule CLIV.

OF COMPOUND TENSES.

The compound of the imperfect, as *j'avois parlé*, *j'avois fait*, *j'avois reçu* &c. is used in french to express a thing done before another. Exam.

Le Roi avoit nommé un Amiral, quand on lui parla de vous.

The King *had* named an Admiral, when he heard of you.

The compound of the preterite, as *j'eus parlé, j'eus fait, j'eus reçu* &c. is used to express a particular fact happened in a time quite past, and particularly after the conjunctions *quand, dès que, aussitôt que, après que*. Exam.

Dès que le Parlement fut assemblé, l'émeute cessa.

As soon as the Parliament *was assembled*, the riot ceased.

The Compound of the future and conditional are generally used in french as in english, and as they offer no difficulty, they require no explanation.

CHAPTER XVI

OF THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

This chapter is divided into three sections. The first enumerates the adjectives, pronouns, verbs and conjunctions which govern always the subjunctive mood. The second treats of the verbs and conjunctions which govern the following verb, sometimes in the indicative, and sometimes in the subjunctive, and points out in what circumstances each mood must be used. The third explains when the verbs governed in the subjunctive must be put in the present, when in the preterite, and when in the compound tenses.

SECTION THE FIRST.

WORDS WHICH GOVERN ALWAYS THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Rule CLV.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is put in the subjunctive mood.

1°. After a superlative, as we said before rule 43. Exam.

La meilleure garde qu'un roi puisse avoir, est le cœur de ses sujets.

The best guard a king can have, is the heart of his subjects.

Vous êtes le plus savant que je connoisse.

You are the most learned man I know.

2°. After these five indeterminate pronouns, *quelque* whatever, *qui que ce soit* whoever, *personne* nobody, *pas un* not one, *aucun* none, *rien* nothing, as we said before speaking of indeterminate pronouns, rule 109 and following, Exam.

De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.

Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander.

Je ne connois personne qui soit aussi heureux que vous.

I know nobody, who is so happy as you are.

Je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse blâmer dans votre conduite.

I have nothing reprehensible in your conduct.

3°. After the ordinal numbers, as *le premier* the first, *le second* the second, *le troisième* the third, *le dernier* the last &c. Exam.

Vous êtes le premier ami que j'aie rencontré à Londres.

You are the first friend, I have met with in London.

4°. After these three words *le seul*, *l'unique*, the only one, and *jamais* never. Exam.

Mon fils est le seul, sur qui je puisse compter.

My son is the only one upon whom I can rely.

Je ne croirai jamais, qu'il veuille y consentir.

I shall never believe he will consent to it.

Rule CLVI.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is always put in the subjunctive, after the verbs which express any doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance or any affection of the mind, and particularly after the eighteen following.

Commander,	to command.	désirer,	to wish.
craindre,	to fear.	douter,	to doubt.
defendre,	to forbid.	être bien aise,	to be glad.

être content,	<i>to be satisfied.</i>	nier,	<i>to deny.</i>
être étonné,	<i>to wonder.</i>	ordonner,	<i>to order.</i>
être fâché,	<i>to be sorry.</i>	prier,	<i>to pray.</i>
être surpris,	<i>to be surprised.</i>	se réjouir,	<i>to rejoice.</i>
s'étonner,	<i>to wonder.</i>	souhaiter,	<i>to wish.</i>
ignorer,	<i>to be ignorant.</i>	vouloir,	<i>to be willing.</i>

Examples.

Je crains que mon père ne soit mort.

I fear my father is dead.

Je desre que vous réussissiez. *I wish you may succeed.*

Je doute qu'il soit arrivé. *I doubt that he is come.*

Je suis fâché qu'il soit malade. *I am sorry he is sick.*

Je souhaite qu'on fasse la paix. *I wish they make peace.*

Je veux qu'il m'obéisse. *I will have him obey me.*

And so on for others before mentioned.

Rule CLVII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is always put in the subjunctive, after the imperional, *il faut* it must, *il est fâcheux* it is sad, *il est juste*, *il est injuste*, it is just, it is unjust, *il convient* it becomes, *il importe* it matters, and generally after all those not mentioned in the next section, rule 160. Exam.

Il est nécessaire qu'il y ait un Dieu créateur de l'univers.

It is necessary that there is a God creator of the universe.

Il faut que j'aille en ville. *I must go in town.*

Il est juste qu'il la voie. *It is just that he should see her.*

And so on for others.

Rule CLVIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A verb is always put in the subjunctive mood after the following conjunctions.

Afin que,	<i>that.</i>	malgré que,	<i>for all that.</i>
a moins que,	<i>unless.</i>	non obstant que,	<i>for all that.</i>
avant que,	<i>before.</i>	non que, non pas que,	<i>not that</i>
bien que,	<i>though.</i>	posé que,	<i>suppose that.</i>
de crainte que,	<i>for fear.</i>	pour que,	<i>that.</i>
de peur que,	<i>lest.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided.</i>
en cas que,	<i>if.</i>	quoique,	<i>though.</i>
encore que,	<i>though.</i>	sans que,	<i>without.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till.</i>	soit que,	<i>whether.</i>
loin que,	<i>far from.</i>	supposé que,	<i>suppose that.</i>

Examples.

A moins que vous ne m'accompagniez, je ne sortirai pas.

Unless you come with me, I will not go out.

Bien qu'il soit paresseux, il fait beaucoup de progrès.

Though he is lazy, yet he improves much.

Envoyez moi votre livre, afin que je le lise.

Send me your book, that I may read it.

Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient venus.

I will be ready before they are come.

N. B. The subjunctive is also used in the beginning of a sentence, to express a surprise, an imprecation or an ardent desire. Exam.

Puissiez-vous être heureux!

May you be happy!

Que je meure, si je ne me venge!

May I rather die, than not to revenge!

SECTION THE SECOND.

VERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN
SOMETIMES THE INDICATIVE AND SOME-
TIMES THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Rule CLIX.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

The following verbs.

Affirmer, *to affirm.*

Affurer, *to assure.*

Appercevoir, *to perceive.*

Avouer, *to confess.*

Conclure,	<i>to conclude.</i>	Penser,	<i>to think.</i>
Convenir,	<i>to agree.</i>	Prédire,	<i>to foretell.</i>
Croire,	<i>to believe.</i>	Prévoir,	<i>to foresee.</i>
Déclarer,	<i>to declare.</i>	Promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
Dire,	<i>to say.</i>	Publier,	<i>to publish.</i>
Espérer,	<i>to hope.</i>	Songer,	<i>to think.</i>
Juger,	<i>to judge.</i>	Soutenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>
Jurer,	<i>to swear.</i>	Supposer,	<i>to suppose.</i>
Maintenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>	Voir,	<i>to see.</i>
Oublier,	<i>to forget.</i>	Savoir,	<i>to know.</i>

And in general all those which express the intellectual faculties of the mind govern the indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most commonly the subjunctive when they are used negatively, interrogatively, or are preceded by the conjunction *si*. Exam.

Je crois qu'il a raison ; croyez-vous qu'il ait raison ? je ne crois pas qu'il ait raison.

I believe he *is* in the right ; do you believe he *is* in the right ; I do not believe he *is* in the right.

J'espère qu'il viendra. Espérez-vous qu'il vienne ?

I hope he *will* come. Do you hope he *will* come ?

Partons, si vous pensez qu'il fasse beau iens.

Let us go out, if you think it *will* be good weather.

If we ask a question less to be informed of a thing, than to inform others of it ; the second verb is put in the indicative and not in the subjunctive. Exam.

Vous ai-je dit que mon père est mort ?

Have I told you that my father *is* dead ?

Vous apperçûtes-vous qu'on vouloit me tromper ?

Did you perceive they *wanted* to deceive me ?

Rule CLX.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

The impersonal verbs denoting *evidence, certitude* or *probability* of a thing such as, *il est clair*, it is clear ; *il est certain* it is certain ; *il est vrai*, it is true ; *il est probable*, it is probable &c. govern the next verb in the indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most frequently in the subjunctive when they are used interrogatively, negatively or conditionally. Exam.

Il est certain que vous avez tort ; mais il n'est pas certain que j'aie raison ;

It is certain that you are in the wrong ; but it is not certain I am in the right.

Il est probable qu'on fera la paix cette année. Est-il probable qu'on fasse la paix cette année ?

It is probable they will make peace this year. Is it probable they will make peace this year ?

Note 1° The impersonal verbs preceded by *on*, govern also the next verb in the indicative, when the sentence is affirmative, and in the subjunctive, when it is negative, interrogative or conditional, Exam.

On croit que notre flotte a été battue. Croit-on que notre flotte ait été battue ?

It is believed that our fleet has been beaten. Is it believed that our fleet has been beaten ?

Note 2° The impersonal *sembler* governs the next verb in the indicative, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun in the dative case, and usually in the subjunctive, when it is not ; thus we say,

Il semble à un aveugle que tout est ténébreux ;

It seems to a blind-man that every thing is dark.

Il semble que vous ne sachiez rien, & que vous n'ayez vu personne :

It seems that you know nothing, and you have seen nobody

Rule CLXI.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

The five following conjunctions *de manière que*, *de sorte que*, *tellement que* so that, *sinon que*, except that, govern the indicative, when the sentence affirms positively that the thing in question is or will be, and the subjunctive when the thing is not certain, but rather wished for ; thus we say,

ind { *Votre fils se comporte de manière qu'il est, & sera toujours*
aimé de ses maîtres ;
 Your son behave in such a manner that he is, and
 will always be loved by his masters.

- sub* { Comportez vous de manière que vous foyez aimé & estimé
 de vos maîtres & de vos maîtresses;
 Behave in such a manner that you may be loved
 and esteemed by your masters and mistresses.
ind { Je n'ai rien à vous dire sinon que j'ai fait mon devoir;
 I have nothing to tell you, except that I have done
 my duty.
sub { Je ne demande rien de vous, sinon que vous fassiez votre de-
 voir & que vous appreniez votre leçon;
 I ask nothing from you, except that you do your
 duty, and learn your lesson.

Note. The word *que* used in the second part of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of a conjunction which is in the first, governs the same mood as the conjunction it stands for, Ex.

- ind* { Aussiôt que mon frère m'écrira, & que j'aurai des occasions,
 je vous donnerai de ses nouvelles:
 As soon as my brother write to me, and I have the op-
 portunities, I will let you know.
sub { A moins que vous ne veniez, ou que vous ne m'écriviez,
 je ne le ferai pas.
 Unless you come or write to me, I will not do it.

The word *que* used to avoid the repetition of *si*, governs the subjunctive. Exam.

S'il vient quelqu'un & que je ne sois pas à la maison, envoyez moi chercher :

If somebody comes and I am not at home, send for me.

SECTION THE THIRD.

WHICH TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE
MUST BE USED.

Rule CLXII.

A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of four preceding rules, is usually put in the present, when the first verb is in the present or future of the indicative; and in the preterite, when the first verb is in any other tenses, Ex.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne: I fear lest he comes.

Je craignois que vous ne vinssiez:

I feared lest you would come.

Il faudra que je le fasse; I shall be obliged to do it.

Il faudroit que je le fisse I should be obliged to do it.

Rule CLXIII.

Though the first verb be in the present or future, the second is put in the preterite subjunctive, when it is followed by a third verb in the imperfect, or by a conditional expression which has reference to a past time. Exam.

Croyez-vous qu'ils me refusassent, si je les en priois;

Do you think they would refuse me, if I did beg it of them.

Je ne crois pas que vos frères fussent venus sans moi.

I do not think your brothers would have come without me.

Sans moi is a conditional expression relative to a past time, and signifies if I had not persuaded them to come.

Rule CLXIV.

A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood, is put in the compound of the present in french, when it is in english in the compound of the present or of the future; it is put in the compound of the preterite in french, when it is in any other compound tenses in english. Thus we say.

Je crains que vous n'ayez fait des plaintes de moi.

I fear you have complained of me.

Je craignois que vous n'eussiez fait des plaintes de moi.

I feared you would have complained of me.

Je ne crois pas qu'il ait appris la Géographie; je ne croyois pas qu'il eût appris la Géographie.

I do not believe you have learnt Geography; I did not believe he had learnt Geography.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

Would, could, should and might

The words *would, could, should* and *might* which we have hitherto considered only as the distinctive mark of tenses, and with which we have conjugated all our verbs regular and irregular, are also sometimes verbs themselves, and expressed in french by *vouloir, pouvoir* or *devoir*, as you may see in the following rules.

Rule CLXV.

1° *Will and would.*

When the words *will* or *would* are not joined to any verb, they are verbs themselves, and must be expressed by the same tense of *vouloir*, as *should* be the verb *to be willing* if it was used; thus we say,

Pourquoi ne faites-vous pas votre thème? Parce que je ne veux pas.

Why do you not do your exercise? Because I *will* not, or I am not willing.

Si je ne suis pas marié, c'est que je n'ai pas voulu.

If I am not married, it is because I *would* not, or have not been willing.

The words *will* and *would* though followed by another verb, are also expressed by the verb *vouloir*, when they imply a command or an order. Exam.

Je veux qu'on m'obéisse. I will be obeyed.

Il vouloit que vous lui demandassiez pardon.

He would have you beg his pardon.

2° *Should.*

The word *should* is a verb, and must be expressed in french by some tense of the verb *devoir*, when it denotes *necessity* or *duty*. Exam.

Puisque la Religion le défend, vous ne devez pas le faire.

You should not do that, since Religion forbids it.

S'il a besoin d'argent, il devrait m'en demander.

If he wants money, he should ask me for some.

3°. Could or might.

The words *could* and *might* are verbs, when they denote possibility; they are both expressed in french by the same tense of the verb *pouvoir*, as should be the verb *to be able*, if it was used. Exam.

Si je pouvois vous rendre ce service, je ne vous refuserais pas.

If I could do you that service, I would not refuse you.

Vous auriez pu faire votre thème, si vous aviez voulu.

You could have done your exercise, if you had been willing.

The words *may* and *can* are usually verbs, and expressed in french by the present tense of the verb *pouvoir*. Exam.

Vous pouvez écrire votre lettre avant dîner.

You can write your letter before dinner.

N B. It is sometimes indifferent to express the words *would*, *could*, *should* or *might* as a verb, or as the mark of the conditional, thus we say: *je pourrais vous payer, si je voulois* or, *je vous payerais si je voulois*. I could pay you, if I would; but this being seldom the case, the explanation which I have given was necessary, and must be particularly attended to.

Rule CLXVI.

When the irregular *would*, *could*, *should* or *might* are not followed by any verb, or are by one only, they can be expressed by the imperfect, the conditional, the preterite of the indicative or of the subjunctive, according as the sense requires it; thus *I would* can be rendered by *je voulais*, *je voulais*, *je voudrais* or *je voulais*; *I should* by *je devais*, *je dus*, *je devrais* or *je dusse*, and *I could* by *je pouvois*, *je pus*, *je pourrais* or *je pusse*. Exam.

Je pouvois faire cela hier. I could do that yesterday.

Je pus le faire autrefois. I could do it formerly.

Je le pourrais, si je voulois. I could, if I would.

Je ne crois pas que je le pusse. I do not think I could do it.

Rule CLXVII.

When the irregular *would, could, should* or *might* are followed by two verbs, of which the last is in the participle, they can be rendered in french,

1° By the imperfect of *avoir, pouvoir* or *devoir*; then the verb which is in the participle in english is put in the infinitive in french. Exam.

Si j'avois voulu l'entreprendre, il seroit fait à présent.

If I *would have* undertaken it, it would be ready at present.

2° By the conditional of *avoir* and the participle *woulu, pu* or *du*. Exam.

Vous auriez du m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.

You *should have* wrote to me, since you knew my direction.

3° By the conditional of *vouloir, pouvoir* or *devoir* and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive mood. Exam.

Je voudrois avoir fait mon thème.

I would I had done my exercise.

Vous pourriez avoir été trompé.

You might have been deceived.

Note 1° The sentence, *I will have him pay me: He would have me betray my duty*, and others of the same sort, are rendered in french by *je veux qu'il me paye: Il voudroit que je trahisse mon devoir*; as if it was, I will that he pay me: He would that I betray my duty.

Note 2° If you are at a loss in which tense to put the irregular *would, could, should* or *might*, change *would* in the verb to *be willing*; *should* in to *be obliged*; *could* in to *be able*, and then put the verbs *pouvoir, vouloir* and *devoir* in the same tense in french, as the verb *to be* is in english, and you will never be mistaken.

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

We have already treated of the impersonal verbs in the rule 160. They are used in the third person only and are generally construed in french as in english, except the following, *il faut*, *il y a*, *il est* and *c'est* which require a particular attention.

Rule CLXVIII.

The impersonal *it must* is always expressed by *il faut* for the present, and by *il faudra* for the future. The noun or pronoun which in english is the nominative of the impersonal *must*, becomes in french the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive. Exam.

Il faut que je le voie. I must see him.

Il faut que vous veniez demain. You must come to morrow.

Il faudra que votre frère lui écrive.

Your brother must write to him.

The verb *have* which comes often after the impersonal *it must*, is sometimes put in the subjunctive as; *Il faut que j'aie des livres.* I must have books. *Il faut que votre frère ait un chapeau.* Your brother must have a hat. But it is more elegantly suppressed, and then the nominative of *must* is put in the dative case, thus; *Il me faut des livres.* *Il faut un chapeau à votre frère.*

The verb *should* coming at the end of a sentence, is also usually expressed by *il faut*. Exam. *Votre thème n'est pas fait comme il faut.* Your exercise is not done as it should be.

Rule CLXIX.

IL Y A. *There is.*

The verb *to be* preceded by the adverb *there*, becomes impersonal, and is expressed by the third person of the verb *avoir* for every tense, thus: *Il y a.* There is or there are. *Il y avoit.* There was or there were &c. Exam.

Il y a beaucoup de difficultés dans votre affaire.

There are many difficulties in your affair.

Il n'y a point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole,

There is no talent more shining than that of speaking.

The verb *to be* preceded by the word *some* or *many*, is also often expressed by the impersonal *il y a, il y avoit*, as if it was *there are some &c.* Exam.

Il y a des chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom.

Some christians are unworthy of that name.

Il y a bien de faux amis. Many friends are false.

The impersonal *il y a, il y avoit &c.* is also used in french in three circumstances

1° to ask the distance from one place to another; then it answers to the english word *how far*. Exam.

Combien y a-t-il de Winchester à Londres?

How far is Winchester from London?

2° To ask the number of such or such thing; then it answers to the word *how many*. Exam.

Combien y a-t-il d'habitants en France

How many inhabitants are there in France?

Combien y a-t-il de Rois en Europe?

How many Kings are there in Europe?

3° To ask *how long* it is since such or such thing happened. Exam.

Combien y a-t-il que Mr. votre père est mort?

How long has your father been dead?

When the question is made by *il y a, il y avoit &c.* we generally answer by the same verb. Exam.

Combien y a-t-il de Douvres à Calais? Il y a dix lieux.

Combien y a-t-il d'âmes en Angleterre?

Il y en a onze millions.

Combien y a-t-il que la guerre dure? Il y a quatre ans,

N B. The impersonal *il y a* must be used in french every time the sentence is or could be englished by *there is*. It is also frequently used after the words *how long, how far, how many* as in the preceding examples.

Rule CLXX.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN *il est*, AND *c'est*, IT IS.

The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be* &c is expressed in french by *il est, il étoit, il sera* &c when it is followed by an adjective only, or by a substantive of time, Exam. *

Il est six heures. Il est temps de partir.

It is six o' clock. It is time to set out.

Il est difficile de plaire à tout le monde.

It is difficult to please every body.

It is expressed by *c'est, c'étoit, ce fut* &c when it is followed by a substantive which has not reference to time, by a pronoun, or a verb in the infinitive mood. Exam.

Ce n'est pas l'argent qui nous rend heureux, c'est la vertu.

It is not fortune which renders us happy, it is virtue.

C'est à vous à jouer. It is yours turn to play.

C'est autoriser le vice que de ne pas punir les méchans.

Not to punish the wicked is authorising vice.

Rule CLXXI

The impersonal *it is, it was* &c. followed by a substantive or a pronoun *eux* or *elles* in the nominative plural, is expressed by *ce sont* and not by *c'est*. Exam.

Ce sont eux qui l'ont vu. It is they who have seen him.

Ce sont vos frères qui ont raison.

It is your brothers who are in the right.

Not c'est vos frères qui ont raison. not c'est eux qui l'ont vu.

The impersonal *it is, it was* &c. is always expressed by *c'est* or *c'étoit* in the singular before the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous*, and also before the pronouns *eux, elles* or a substantive plural, when they are not in the nominative case. Exam.

C'est vous qui avez tort. It is you who are in the wrong.

C'est à eux à répondre. It is theirs turn to answer.

C'est de vos frères que je me plains. It is of your brothers I complain.

* *C'est* is sometimes used before an adjective in sentences like these, *c'est bon, c'est mauvais, &c.* but then *c'est bon* signifies *cela est bon*; and *c'est mauvais*, signifies *cela est mauvais*, or *c'est une chose mauvaise*.

CHAPTER XIX.

OF ADVERBS.

Rule CLXXII.

Adverbs are usually placed after the verb in a simple tense and between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound one. Exam.

Je ne parle jamais mal de personne.

I never speak ill of any body.

Je n'ai jamais mal parlé de personne.

I have never spoken ill of any body.

Rule CLXXIII.

The adverbs which govern a noun, are put in french after the participle in a compound tense. Exam.

Votre frère a agi conséquemment à ses principes.

Your brother has acted conformably to his principles.

J'ai eu beaucoup de peine à le persuader.

I have had much difficulty in persuading him.

Adverbs of time, and those composed of two or three words, are usually placed after the participle in a compound tense. Exam.

Il a fait beau tems aujourd'hui.

It has been good weather to day.

J'ai rencontré votre frère par hasard en allant à Londres.

As I was going to London, I met with your brother by chance.

Not il a aujourd'hui fait beau tems. Not j'ai par hazard rencontré votre frère.

Note. 1. Many adverbs begin usually a sentence in french or a member of it, such are *cependant* mean while, *c'est pourquoi* therefore, *comment* how, *combien* how much, *quand* when, *où* where &c. Exam.

Quand irez-vous en France. When will you go to France.

Note 2. The adverb *presque* almost, goes before *toujours* and *souvent*; and these two go before all others, when several meet together. Exam.

Le roi est presque toujours malade.

The king is scarcely ever well.

Votre frère & le mien sont toujours ensemble.

Your brother and mine are always together.

CHAPTER XX.

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

Rule CLXXIV.

Prepositions are placed in french before the word they govern, in english they are sometimes placed after. Exam.

A qui parlez-vous? Whom do you speak to?

De quoi vous plaignez-vous? What do you complain of?

Pour quoi cela? What that for?

When the prepositions *de*, *à*, *pour*, *après* and *sans* govern an infinitive mood, they may be separated from it, by the negation and the pronouns governed by the verb, if there is any, example.

Je suis fâché de ne vous l'avoir pas dit plutôt.

I am sorry I did not tell it you before.

Il a vendu sa maison sans nous en avertir.

He has sold his house without telling it us.

Rule CLXXV.

The prepositions *from* and *to*, used to express the distance or the going from such a town to another specified, are rendered *from* by *de*, and *to* by *à*. Exam.

Je vais en un jour de Paris à l'Aigle.

I go in one day *from* Paris *to* l'Aigle.

They are rendered, *from* by *de* and *to* by *en* in all other circumstances, when they are used to express a distance or a going from a place to another. Exam.

Je vais de rue en rue, de ville en ville, de province en province.

I go from street to street, from town to town, from province to province.

When the preposition *to* signifies *so far as*, it is generally expressed by *jusqu'à*. Exam.

J'ai bu le calice jusqu'à la lie.

I have drunk the cup to the dregs.

Je le poursuivrai jusqu'à la fin.

I will prosecute him to the end.

Rule CLXXVI.

An english preposition has often several significations and consequently must be expressed diverse ways in french. Let us take for instance of it, the preposition *about*. Exam.

Je suis venu pour vous parler touchant notre affaire.

I am come to speak you about our affair.

J'irai vous voir vers la fin du mois prochain.

I will go and see you about the end of the next month.

Il arriva sur la fin du dîner.

Dinner was about over, when he came.

Rule CLXXVII.

The prepositions *de*, & *à* are usually repeated before every noun, pronoun or verb, others such as *avec*, *contre*, *sans* &c. are repeated before nouns or verbs of different signification, whether they are or not repeated in english. Exam.

Le fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre pour racheter les hommes & pour détruire l'empire du démon.

The son of God is come on earth to redeem men and to destroy the empire of the devil.

They are not usually repeated before words which have pretty near the same signification. Exam.

Le fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre, pour racheter les hommes & les délivrer du péché.

The son of God is come on earth, to redeem men and to free them from sin,

Notre loi ne juge personne, sans l'avoir entendu & examiné.

Our law judges nobody, without having heard and examined him.

However the preposition must be repeated before two verbs even of the same signification, when they govern different nouns or pronouns. Exam.

Notre loi ne juge personne sans l'avoir entendu & sans avoir examiné sa conduite, not & avoir examiné sa conduite.

OF CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

We have spoken at large of conjunctions pag. 111 and 112 Their use and construction have been treated of in the syntax rules, 97, 158 and 161.

What I could add here on the subject would be a tedious repetition of what I have explained before on different heads as occasion required it.

The different species of interjections have been explained pag 111. Their construction is the same in french as in english, and therefore require no explanation.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE CONCORD, DISPOSITION AND REPETITION OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Which parts of speech agree together in french.

1°. ARTICLES.

The three articles *definite, indefinite and partitive* agree in gender and number with their substantive. Exam.

Le père, la mère et les enfants sont à la campagne.

The father, mother and children are in the country.

J'ai un bon jardin et une belle maison près de Londres.

I have a good garden and a fine house near London.

* This chapter may be considered a recapitulation of what has been explained at large in the syntax, on different heads as occasion required it.

Donnez moi du pain, de la viande et des œufs.
Give me some bread, some meat and some eggs.

2°. ADJECTIVES.

All adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they are joined or related. Exam.

Un homme savant, une femme savante, des filles savantes.
A learned man, a learned woman, learned girls.

3°. PRONOUNS.

All personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative and interrogative pronouns agree in gender and number with their substantive. Exam.

Mon frère veut épouser votre sœur ; cependant je crois qu'il ne la connoit pas.

My brother wishes to marry your sister ; yet I think he does not know her.

Son fils, sa fille et ses sœurs viendront ici ce soir.

His son, daughter and sisters will come here to night.

Ce livre est neuf. Cette maison est vieille. Ces plumes sont bonnes.

This book is new. This house is old. These pens are good.

Le vice contre lequel je parle. Les raisons sur lesquelles je me fonde, sont sans réplique.

The vice against which I speak. The reasons I rely upon, are without reply.

Quel est son crime, & quelle est son excuse ?

What is his crime, and what is his excuse.

4°. VERBS.

All personal verbs agree in number and person with their nominative case. Exam.

Je parle, nous parlons. I speak, we speak.

L'homme est mortel, les hommes sont mortels.

Man is mortal, men are mortal.

SECTION THE SECOND.

In which order must be placed the words of a sentence.

1°. The articles, the possessive, demonstrative and interrogative pronouns precede always in french, as in english, the substantive to which they are joined, as you may observe in the examples of the preceding section.

2°. The adjectives of number, as *un, deux, trois, quatre* &c. and also the following *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre* and *petit* precede their substantive, but others are usually placed after, as we have seen before rules 30 and 31.

3°. The relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, lequel* &c. come immediately after the noun or pronoun to which they have reference. Exam. *Ne rejettez pas un avis dont vous connoissez l'utilité.* Do not reject an advice the utility of which you know.

4°. The prepositions come always before the word which they govern. Exam. *De quoi vous plaignez-vous?* What do you complain of?

5°. The adverb is usually put after the verb in a simple tense, as *il répond bien*, he answers well: and after the auxiliary in a compound one, as *il a bien répondu*, he has well answered.

6°. The nominative of a verb precedes it in an affirmative sentence, as *mon père est venu, il m'a donné de l'argent.* My father is come, he has given me some money.

If the sentence is interrogative, and the nominative of the verb be any of the following pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce* or *on*, it is placed after the verb, when it is a simple tense, and after the auxiliary when it is a compound one, Ex. *Parle-t-il? A-t-il parlé? Dit-on? A-t-on dit?*

If the nominative be a substantive or any other pronoun than those before mentioned, it precedes the verb in an in-

interrogative sentence, but then the personal pronouns *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles* must be used after the verb or its auxiliary.

Exam. *Votre père est-il venu ? Votre mère est-elle à la maison ?*
Is your father come ? Is your mother at home ?

7°. The personal pronouns are placed immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the imperative affirmative, as *donnez le moi*. Give it me. *Vendez le nous*. Sell it us.

When the verb is not in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put immediately before it, in a simple tense and immediately before the auxiliaries *avoir* or *être* in a compound one, as *il vous les donnera*. He will give them to you. *Il nous les a vendus*. He has sold them to us. *Il me les a promis*. He has promised them to me &c.

If a verb governs two or more pronouns, they are placed before it in this order; *me, te, se, nous, vous* go before *le, la, les*: *le, la, les* go before *lui* and *leur*. *Lui* and *leur* go before *y* and *en*, Exam. *Il vous les prêterà*. He will lend them to you. *Il les lui prêterà*. He will lend them to him. *Je vous y en enverrai*. I will send you some. *Je leur y en ai envoyé*. I have sent them some.

8°. If the sentence is negative, *ne* precedes the verb and the governed pronouns; the other part of negation such, as *pas, jamais, rien* &c. comes usually after the verb in a simple tense and after its auxiliary in a compound one. Example. *Je ne le croirai jamais*. I will never believe it. *Il ne les a pas vus*. He has not seen them. *Il n'y a rien de plus beau*. There is nothing finer.

If the verb be in the infinitive, the two parts of negation go before it, and even before the governed pronouns; the preposition, if there is any, precedes the negation and the pronouns. Example. *Je le ferai, pour ne pas vous déplaire*. I will do it, not to displease you.

The other parts of speech not mentioned in these eight rules, follow usually the same order in french as in english.

SECTION THE THIRD.

WHICH WORDS MUST BE REPEATED IN A SENTENCE,

1°. *Articles.*

The article must be repeated in french before every substantive. Exam.

Le cœur, l'esprit & les mœurs se forment par l'éducation.

The heart, the mind and manners are formed by education.

2°. *Pronouns.*

The possessive and demonstrative pronouns are repeated in french before every noun, though they are not repeated in english. Exam.

Il faut régler son goût, sa dépense & ses plaisirs.

We must govern our taste, expenses and pleasures

Cet homme & cette femme sont très malheureux.

This man and woman are very unfortunate.

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, are generally repeated before every verb of which they are the nominative case; those of the third are also repeated before verbs which are in diverse tenses, and when the first is affirmative and the other negative, or *vice versa*. Exam.

Je dis & je dirai toujours que vous aviez tort.

I say and will always say that you were in the wrong.

Il le dit, mais il ne le croit pas, je vous assure.

He says so, but he does not believe it, I assure you.

All personal pronouns must be repeated in french before every verb they are governed by, though they are not in english. Exam.

Mon frère vous estime & vous honnore.

My brother esteems and honours you.

3°. *Verbs.*

A verb is repeated in a sentence of two parts, if one is negative and the other affirmative. Exam.

Il faut tout attendre de Dieu, & ne rien attendre des hommes.

We must expect every thing from God, and nothing from men.

In answer to a question, we often repeat the same verb the question is asked by; the English repeat only the auxiliary, Exam.

Avez-vous vu le Roi? Oui Monsieur, je l'ai vu.

Have you seen the King? Yes Sir, I have.

4°. Prepositions.

The prepositions *de*, *à* and *pour* are usually repeated before every noun or every verb. Exam.

Le Brésil produit une grande quantité d'indigo, de sucre, de poivre & de salpêtre.

Brazil produces a great quantity of indigo, sugar, pepper and salt-petre.

The prepositions *avec*, *contre*, *sans* &c. are repeated before nouns of different significations. Exam.

Il est fâché contre vous, mais non pas contre votre argent.

He is angry with you, but not with your money.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

WORDS WHICH MAY BE ELEGANTLY REPEATED.

1°. The substantive. Exam.

La vue de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la vue du corps. Boss.

Ce qui s'ert à la vanité n'est que vanité; tout ce qui n'a que le monde pour fondement, se dissipe & s'évanouit avec le monde. Flechier.

C'est le privilège de Mr. de Turenne d'avoir pu vaincre l'envie: le mérite l'a voit fait naître; le mérite la fit mourir. Flechier.

Romains, souffrirez-vous qu'on vous immole un homme,
Sans qui Rome aujourd'hui cesseroit d'être Rome!

Dis, Valère, dis nous, puisqu'il faut qu'il périsse,
Où penses-tu choisir un lieu pour son supplice?

Sera-ce entre les murs que mille & mille voix
Font résonner encor du bruit de ses exploits?
Sera-ce hors des murs, au milieu de ces places,
Qu'on voit fumer encor du sang des Curiaces?

Corneille.

2° *The adjective.* Exam.

Il y a une infinité de choses qui ne dépendent que d'une lumière humaine, d'une expérience humaine, d'une pénétration humaine. Dès qu'on sort de la nature, tout devient faux dans l'éloquence; la chaleur de ses mouvements les plus passionnés n'est qu'une fausse chaleur; l'éclat de ses figures n'est qu'un faux éclat. L'amour propre est plus habile que le plus habile homme du monde.

3° *The verb.* Exam.

J'oublie que je suis malheureux, quand je songe que vous ne m'avez pas oublié.

La Reine sanctifia sa cour en se sanctifiant elle-même. Fle.

Il s'est efforcé de connoître Dieu qui par sa grandeur est inconnu aux hommes, & de connoître l'homme qui par sa vanité est inconnu à lui-même. Flechier.

En quittant le monde, on ne quitte le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde. Bourdaloue.

The following verses of Lufignan to Zaire contain several repetitions of substantives and verbs.

Ma fille, tendre objet de mes dernières peines,
Songe au moins, songe au sang qui coule dans tes veines.
C'est le sang de vingt Rois, tous chrétiens comme moi,
C'est le sang des héros, défenseurs de ma loi;
C'est le sang des martyrs . . . O fille encor trop chère!
Connois-tu ton destin? fais-tu quelle est ta mère?
Sais-tu bien qu'à l'instant que son flanc mit au jour
Ce triste & dernier fruit d'un malheureux amour;
Je la vis massacrer par la main forcenée,
Par la main des brigands à qui tu t'es donnée,
Tes frères, ces martyrs égorgés à mes yeux,
T'ouvrent leurs bras sanglants tendus du haut des cieux.
Ton Dieu que tu trahis, ton Dieu que tu blasphèmes,
Pour toi, pour tes péchés est mort en ces lieux mêmes,
En ces lieux où mon bras le servit tant de fois,

En ces lieux où son sang te parle par ma voix.
 Vois ces murs, vois ce temple envahi par tes maîtres;
 Tout annonce le Dieu qu'ont vengé tes ancêtres.
 Tourne les yeux; sa tombe est près de ce palais.
 C'est ici la montagne où lavant nos forfaits,
 Il voulut expirer sous les coups de l'impie:
 C'est là que de sa tombe il rappela sa vie:
 Tu ne saurois marcher dans cet auguste lieu,
 Tu n'y peux faire un pas, sans y trouver ton Dieu;
 Et tu n'y peux rester sans renier ton père,
 Ton honneur qui te parle, & ton Dieu qui t'éclaire.

Voltaire.

CHAPTER XXII.

OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

Idioms are a mode of speaking peculiar to a language, and which cannot be literally translated in another.

The chapter of idioms is divided into three sections. *The first* explains the idiomatical expressions of the verbs *to have* and *to be*. *The second* shews the idiomatical significations in which can be taken the verbs *aller*, *avoir*, *venir*, *donner*, *faire*, *jouer*, *mourir*, and also the substantive *main*. *The third* contains a series of the most remarkable french idioms.

SECTION THE FIRST

IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS OF THE VERBS

to be AND *to have*.

Rule CLXXVIII.

to be EXPRESSED BY *avoir*.

The verb *to be* is expressed by the same tense of the verb *avoir* in many circumstances.

1°. When it is followed by a word of number such as *one*, *two*, *three*, *four* &c. Exam.

Notre maison a vingt pieds de large.

Our house is twenty feet broad.

J'ai vingt cinq ans. I am twenty five years of age.

2°. When it is used to ask how old is a person or an animal. Exam.

Quel age avez-vous? How old are you?

Quel age a votre chien? How old is your dog?

3°. When it is followed by the words *hungry, dry, or thirsty.* Exam.

Avez-vous faim, ma fille, oui, ma mère, j'ai grand faim?

Are you hungry, daughter, yes, mother, I am very hungry.

Avez-vous soif? Non, je n'ai pas soif à présent.

Are you dry? No, I am not dry at present.

4°. When it is followed by the words *hot, warm, or cold.* The part of the body which is cold or hot, is preceded in french by *au* for the *m.* by *à la* for the *f.* and by *aux* for the *pl.* instead of the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, or their* used in english. Exam.

J'ai froid aux pieds. My feet are cold.

Avez-vous chaud aux mains? Are your hands warm?

Chauffez-vous si vous avez froid?

Warm yourself if you are cold?

5°. When it is or could be followed by the adverb *there,* without altering the sense of the sentence. Exam.

Il y a beaucoup de pauvres en Angleterre.

There are many poors in England.

6°. When it is followed by the words *in the wrong, in the right, or afraid.* Exam.

Vous aviez raison, & moi j'avois tort.

You were in the right, and I was in the wrong.

Pourquoi avez-vous peur? Why are you afraid?

7°. When *to be* is followed by *in vain,* it is commonly expressed by *avoir beau.* Exam.

Vous avez beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas.

It is in vain to wait for him, he will not come.

J'avois beau l'avertir, il ne vouloit pas me croire.

It was in vain for me to advise him, he would not believe me.

Rule CLXXIX.

To be EXPRESSED BY *faire*.

The verb *to be* is expressed by *faire* speaking of the kind or disposition of the weather, and with the words *jour, nuit, soleil, vent* &c. Exam.

Il fait beau temps aujourd'hui. It is fine weather to day.

Il faisoit mauvais temps hier. It was very bad weather yesterday.

Il fera froid en peu. It will be cold soon.

Fait-il chaud en France; Is it hot in France?

If the word *weather* was the nominative case of the verb *to be*; then it should be expressed by *être*, and not by *faire*.

Exam. Le temps est beau. The weather is fine. L'air est froid. The air is cold, not le temps fait beau, l'air fait froid.

Rule CLXXX.

To be EXPRESSED BY *se porter*.

The verbs *to be* and *to do* used in english to inquire or to speak of the health of somebody, are both expressed in french by the reflected verb *se porter*. Exam.

Comment vous portez-vous? How do you do?

Je me porte fort bien. I am very well.

Mr. votre père se porte-t-il bien? Is your father well?

Il se portoit bien hier. He was well yesterday.

Rule CLXXXI.

Il en est de. IT IS WITH.

The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be* &c. followed by the preposition *with* is expressed by, *il en est de* for the present, *il en étoit de* for the imp. *il en fut de* for the pret. *il en*

sera de for the fut. *il en seroit de* for the cond. *il en soit de* for the pres. subj. *il en fût de* for the pret. Exam.

Il en est de vous comme des autres hommes.

It is with you as with other men.

Je ne crois pas qu'il en soit de mon fils comme du vôtre.

I do not believe it will be with my son as with your.

N. B. The verb *to be* before an infinitive, is sometimes expressed by the verb *devoir*, sometimes it is not expressed at all, and then the next verb is put in the future. Exam.

Je dois dîner, ou je dînerai en ville aujourd'hui.

I am to dine out to day.

Rule CLXXXII.

To have EXPRESSED by *être*.

The verb *to have* is expressed by *être* 1°. in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs. Exam.

Je me suis levé ce matin à six heures.

I have risen this morning at six o' clock.

Vous êtes-vous aperçu du tour?

Have you perceived the trick?

2°. In the compound tenses of the verbs *aller*, *arriver*, *déchoir*, *décéder*, *entrer*, *mourir*, *naître*, *partir*, *tomber*, also of *venir* and its compounds, *devenir*, *disconvenir*, *intervenir*, *parvenir*, *revenir* and *survenir*. Exam.

Vous êtes allé à Londres sans ma permission.

You have gone to London without my leave.

Mon frère est mort ce matin.

My brother has died this morning.

Rule CLXXXIII.

AVOIR MAL À.

We make use of *avoir mal à*, to ask or to express, what part of the body is affected with some illness or pain. Exam.

Avez-vous mal à la tête?

Have you the head ach?

J'ai mal aux yeux.

My eyes are sore.

Avez-vous mal aux dents?

Have you the tooth ach?

J'ai mal au côté.

I feel a pain in my side.

SECTION THE SECOND.

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *aller*.

The verb *aller* besides its natural signification of *to go* has many others, as may be seen in the following Exam.

<i>Le commerce ne va plus.</i>	Trading is dead.
<i>Est-ce ainsi que vous y allez?</i>	Is this your way of proceeding?
<i>Comment va la santé?</i>	How do you do?
<i>Tout va bien, tout va mal.</i>	All is well, all is bad.
<i>Cet habit vous va bien.</i>	That cloth suits you well.
<i>Mon frère va partir.</i>	My brother is going out.
<i>Aller aux voix.</i>	To put to the vote.
<i>Il s'en va pleuvoir, neiger.</i>	It will rain, snow.
<i>Il y va de la vie.</i>	Life is concerned in it.
<i>Cela va sans dire.</i>	That is understood.
<i>Aller pied à pied, pas à pas.</i>	To act deliberately.
<i>Il y va de mon honneur.</i>	My honour is concerned in it.
<i>Vous ne faites qu'aller & venir.</i>	You are ever running up and down.
<i>Il va venir.</i>	He is coming.
<i>Allez-vous sortir?</i>	Are you going out?

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *avoir*. *

<i>Avoir besoin de quelque chose.</i>	To want something.
<i>Avoir bonne mine.</i>	To look well.
<i>Avoir mauvaise mine.</i>	To look bad.
<i>Avoir affaire de quelque chose.</i>	To have occasion for some thing.
<i>Avoir le cœur sur les lèvres.</i>	To be free and open.
<i>Avoir des affaires par dessus les yeux.</i>	To be full of business.

* The verbs used in the infinitive present in some idiomatical significations, may be used in all other tenses and persons in the same sense.

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *donner*.

The verb *donner* besides its signification of *to give* is used in many other senses as it appears by the following Exam.

<i>Se donner des airs.</i>	To take great deal upon one self.
<i>Donner dans le piège.</i>	To be caught in the snare.
<i>En donner à garder à quelqu'un.</i>	To make a fool of some body.
<i>Se donner du bon tems.</i>	To pass one's time merily.
<i>Se donner de garde de faire telle chose.</i>	To be sure not to do such a thing.
<i>Donner sur l'ennemi.</i>	To fall upon the enemy.
<i>Ce vin donne à la tête.</i>	That wine flies up to the head.
<i>Ne savoir où donner de la tête.</i>	To know not what way to turn.
<i>Donner carte blanche.</i>	To give full liberties.

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *Faire*.

<i>Faire grâce à quelqu'un.</i>	To forgive somebody.
<i>Faire le malade.</i>	To sham sickness.
<i>Faire fond sur quelqu'un.</i>	To rely upon somebody.
<i>Faire faire une montre.</i>	To bespeak a watch.
<i>Faire voile, or mettre à la voile.</i>	To set sail.
<i>Se faire des amis.</i>	To get friends.
<i>Se faire des affaires.</i>	To bring one's self into trouble.
<i>Se faire à la fatigue.</i>	To inure one's self to hardships.
<i>Faire bien ses affaires.</i>	To prosper.
<i>Faire des contes à dormir debout.</i>	To tell idles stories.
<i>Faire un pas de clerc.</i>	To take a false step.
<i>Faire des armes.</i>	To fence.
<i>Faire la sourde oreille.</i>	To have no ears.
<i>Faire bonne mine à quelqu'un.</i>	To receive one kindly.
<i>Faire l'homme d'importance.</i>	To pretend to great matters.

SEVERAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *Jouer*.

<i>Jouer des instruments.</i>	To play upon instruments.
<i>Jouer à quelque jeu.</i>	To play at some game.
<i>Jouer une pièce de théâtre.</i>	To act a play.
<i>Jouer un tour à quelqu'un.</i>	To serve one a trick.
<i>Jouer quite ou double.</i>	To run all chance.

Jouer de son reste. To use one's last shifts.

Jouer au plus fin. To vie in cunning.

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF *Mourir*.

Mourir de faim. To be starved.

Mourir de soif. To be choaked with thirst.

Mourir de froid. To starve with cold.

Mourir de chaud. To be extremely hot.

Mourir de peur. To be frightened to death.

Mourir de chagrin. To grieve one's self to death.

Mourir de douleur. To have one's heart broken.

IDIOMATICAL SIGNIFICATIONS OF THE WORD *Main*.

Donner la main à un malheureux. To relieve an unfortunate.

Donner un coup de main. To help.

Donner à plaines mains. To give largely.

Donner de main en main. To handle about.

Faire main basse sur l'ennemi. To put the enemy to the sword.

Faire un coup de main. To do a bold action.

Faire quelque chose sous main. To do something secretly.

Mettre l'épée à la main. To draw the sword.

Prendre à toutes mains. To catch every ways.

En venir aux mains. To fight.

SECTION THE THIRD.

A SERIES OF THE MOST CURIOUS FRENCH IDIOMS.

Aller à bride abbatue. To go full speed.

Avoir la mort entre les dents. To have already one foot in the grave.

Avoir la tête près du bonnet. To take fire presently.

Boire le calice jusqu'à la lie. To drink the cup to the dregs.

C'est la mer à boire. It is an endless business.

Chercher à pied & à cheval. To look every where.

Couper la parole à quelqu'un.	<i>To interrupt one who speaks.</i>
Découvrir le pot aux roses.	<i>To find out the mystery.</i>
Dormir la grasse matinée.	<i>To sleep very late.</i>
Elever quelqu'un jusqu'aux nues.	<i>To praise one to excess.</i>
Etre à deux doigts de sa perte.	<i>To be on the brink of ruin.</i>
Etre tendre à la mouche.	<i>To be very captious.</i>
Jetter de la poudre aux yeux.	<i>To cast a mist before one's eyes.</i>
Jetter feu & flâme.	<i>To fret and fume.</i>
Manger son bled en herbes.	<i>To spend one's revenue before it comes in.</i>
Mettre de l'eau dans son vin.	<i>To allay one's passion.</i>
Mettre les fers au feu.	<i>To fall stoutly to work.</i>
Mettre une armée sur pied.	<i>To raise an army.</i>
Ne demander que plaies & bosses.	<i>To love strife and contention.</i>
Ne savoir sur quel pied danser.	<i>Not to know what way to turn.</i>
Opiner du bonnet.	<i>To vote bluntly.</i>
Partager le gâteau.	<i>To share the profit.</i>
Passer quelqu'un au fil de l'épée.	<i>To put somebody to the sword.</i>
Prendre l'air du bureau.	<i>To feel people's pulse.</i>
Prendre quelqu'un au pied levé.	<i>To snap up one.</i>
Remuer ciel & terre.	<i>To leave nothing undisturbed.</i>
Risquer le tout pour le tout.	<i>To lay all at stake.</i>
River le clou à quelqu'un.	<i>To give one as good as he brings.</i>
Rompre la paille avec quelqu'un.	<i>To fall out with one.</i>
Tirer au court fêtu.	<i>To draw lots.</i>
Tirer son épingle du jeu.	<i>To slip one's neck out of the collar.</i>
Trouver chaussure à son pied.	<i>To be well fitted.</i>
Trouver son maître.	<i>To meet with one's match.</i>
Venir à bout de ses desseins.	<i>To succeed in one's designs.</i>

CHAPTER XXIII.

A SERIES OF THE PROVERBS THE MOST USED
IN FRENCH.

Abondance de bien ne nuit. *Store is not fore.*
pas.

A force de forger, on de- *Affiduity makes all things easy.*
vient forgeron.

A l'impossible nul n'est tenu. *There is no fence against the flail.*

A méchant chien court lien, *A curst cur must be tied short.*

Ami au prêt, ennemi au ren- *I lose my money and my friend.*
dre.

Apprenti n'est pas maître. *You must spoil before you spin.*

Après la mort le medecin. *After death comes the physician.*

A qui veut mal, mal arrive. *Evil to him that evil think.*

Argent comptant porte me- *Ready money is a remedy.*
decine.

Aux grands maux les grands *A desperate disease must have a*
remedes. *desperate cure.*

Beau parler n'écœuche pas la *Fair words cost nothing.*
langue.

Beaucoup de bruit, & peu *A great cry and a little wool.*
d'effet.

Bon avocat, mauvais voisin. *A good lawyer and evil neigh-*
bour.

Bonne renommée vaut mieux *A good name is better than ri-*
que ceinture dorée. *ches.*

Ce n'est pas pour vous que *That is nothing for you.*
le four chauffe.

Ce n'est pas l'habit qui fait *It is not the cowl that makes*
le moine. *the friar.*

Celui qui cherchera le dan- *Harm watch, harm catch.*
ger y périra.

Ce qui abonde ne vicie pas. *Plainty makes dainties.*

Ce qui est différé n'est pas *All is not lost that is delayed.*
perdu.

C'est de la moutarde après *After meat comes mustard.*
diné.

C'est là où gîte le lièvre. *There lies the secret.*

- Charité bien ordonnée com- *Charity begins at home.*
mence par soi-même.
- Chien qui aboie ne mord pas. *Barking dog seldom bites.*
- Dans les petits pots sont les *Short and sweet.*
bonnes épices.
- De tout s'avise à qui pain *Necessity is the mother of inven-*
faut. *tion.*
- De deux maux il faut choisir *Of two evils chuse the least.*
le moindre.
- Faire d'une pierre deux *To kill two birds with one*
coups. *stone.*
- Familiarité engendre mépris. *Familiarity breeds contempt.*
- Faute de parler, on meurt *Spare to speak, and spare to*
sans confession. *speed.*
- Faute d'un point Martin per- *A miss is as good as a mile.*
dit son âne.
- Fin contre fin n'est pas bon *Diamonds cut diamonds.*
à faire doublure.
- Grands vanteurs, petits fai- *Great boast, little roast.*
seurs.
- Il a les yeux plus grands que *His eyes are bigger than his*
le ventre. *belly.*
- Il a plus de hazard qu'un *He is more lucky than wise.*
honnête homme.
- Il a plus de peur que de mal. *He is more afraid than hurt.*
- Il est comme l'oiseau sur la *He has no fixed abode.*
branche.
- Il est comme le poisson dans *The dog's head is in the porridge*
l'eau. *pot.*
- Il crie avant qu'on l'écorche. *He halts before he is lame.*
- Il en fait ses choux gras. *He feathers his nest by it.*
- Il ennuie à qui attend. *Waiting is tedious.*
- Il fait bon pêcher à l'eau *It is good fishing in troubled*
trouble. *water.*
- Il faut battre le fer quand il *Strike the iron while it is hot.*
est chaud.
- Il faut faire vie qui dure. *Old young and old long.*
- Il ne faut pas juger des gens *One must not hang a man by*
par la mine. *his looks.*
- Il n'a ni bouche ni éperon. *He has neither wit nor courage.*
- Il n'est sauce que d'appetit. *Good stomach is the best sauce.*

- Il n'est si bon chartier qui ne verse. *That is a good horse that never stumbles.*
- Il n'est pire eau que celle qui dort. *Smooth water runs deep.*
- Il n'est point de roses sans épines. *No rose without a thorn.*
- Il n'y a point de feu sans fumée. *Where is the smoke, there is the fire.*
- Il n'y a que la première peine qui coûte. *The first step over, the rest is easy.*
- Il sent bien où le bât le blesse. *He feels where the shoe pinches.*
- Il vaut mieux faire envie que pitié. *Better to be envied than pitied.*
- Il vaut mieux plier que de rompre. *It is better to bend than break.*
- Il vaut mieux tard que jamais. *Better late than never.*
- La clef d'or ouvre toutes les serrures. *Bribe can get in without knocking.*
- La faim chasse le loup du bois. *Hunger will break through a stone wall.*
- La fin couronne l'œuvre. *All is well that ends well.*
- La nécessité est la mère de l'industrie. *Necessity is the mother of invention.*
- La nuit tous chats sont gris. *When candles are out, all cats are grey.*
- La patience est un remède à tous maux. *Patience is a plaister for all sores.*
- Le bien mal acquis ne profite jamais. *Ill gotten goods never prosper.*
- Le jeu n'en vaut pas la chandelle. *The business will not quit cost.*
- Le renard prêche aux poules. *The devil rebukes sin.*
- Le sage entend à demi mot. *A word to the wise.*
- Les beaux esprits se rencontrent. *Wits jump.*
- Les bons comptes font les bons amis. *Even reckonings long friends.*
- Les honneurs changent les mœurs. *Honour changes manners.*

- Les petits ruisseaux font les grandes rivières. *Many drops make a shower.*
- Les plus courtes folies sont les meilleures. *The shortest follies are the best.*
- L'occasion fait le larron. *Opportunity makes the thief.*
- L'oïiveté est la mère de tous les vices. *Idleness is the root of all evils.*
- Marchand qui perd ne peut rire. *Let him laugh that wins.*
- Mauvaise herbe croit tous jours assez. *Ill weeds grow apace.*
- Marchandise qui plait est à moitié vendue. *Good ware makes quick markets.*
- Nécessité n'a point de loi. *Necessity has no law.*
- Ne réveillez pas le chat qui dort. *When sorrow is asleep awake it not.*
- Nouveaux rois, nouvelles lois. *New lords, new laws.*
- On n'a jamais bon marché de mauvaise marchandise. *The best the cheapest.*
- On n'a rien sans peine. *No pain no profit.*
- On ne fait pas marché du premier mot. *More words than one go to the bargain.*
- On ne sauroit faire boire un âne s'il n'a soif. *A man may lead his horse to the water, but he cannot make him drink unless he lists.*
- Où il n'y a rien, le Roi perd ses droits. *Where nothing is to be had, the King loses his right.*
- Paris n'a pas été fait dans un jour. *Rome was not built in one day.*
- Parmi les aveugles les borgnes sont Rois. *Among the blind one eyed is a King.*
- Pas à pas va bien loin. *Fair and soft goes fast.*
- Point d'argent point de Suisse. *No money no pater noster.*
- Porter l'eau à la mer. *To carry coal to new castle.*
- Promettre & tenir sont deux. *It is one thing to promise, and another to perform.*
- Quand on emprunte on ne choisit pas. *Beggars must not be chusers.*
- Quand on parle du loup, on en voit la queue. *Talk of the devil, and he will appear.*
- Qui aime Bertrand, aime son chien. *Love me love my dog.*

- Qui fera bien, bien trouvera. *Do well, and have well.*
 Qui menace a souvent peur. *Swaggerers are great cowards.*
 Qui répond paie. *The bail must pay.*
 Qui ne hazarde rien n'a rien. *Nothing venture nothing have.*
 Qui trop embrasse, mal é- *Covet all lose all.*
 treint.
 Qui se fait brebis, le loup le *Who makes himself a sheep, him*
 mange. *the wolf eateth.*
 Selon ta bourse gouverne ta *You must cut your coat according*
 bouche. *to your cloth.*
 Si vous n'êtes pas content, *If you do not like it, turn your*
 prenez des cartes. *buckles behind.*
 Tirer d'un sac deux moutures *To take double fees.*
 Toujours pêche qui en prend *Still he fishes that catches one.*
 un.
 Tout ce qui brille n'est pas *All is not gold that glitters.*
 or
 Toute vérité n'est pas bonne *All truth is not to be spoken at*
 à dire. *all times.*
 Trop de familiarité engen- *Too much familiarity breeds con-*
 dre mépris. *tempt.*
 Un bon chien chasse de race *Cat after kind.*
 Un chien regarde bien un *A cat may look upon a king.*
 évêque.
 Un honnête homme n'a que *An honest man is as good as his*
 sa parole. *word.*
 Un malheur ne vient jamais *One misfortune comes on the neck*
 seul. *of another.*
 Une souris qui n'a qu'un trou *It is good to have two strings*
 est bientôt prise. *to one's bow.*
 Un tiens vaut mieux que *A bird in the hand is worth*
 deux tu l'auras. *two in the bush.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

DISTINCTION IN FRENCH BETWEEN MANY
WORDS WHICH ARE EXPRESSED IN THE SAME
MANNER IN ENGLISH.

1° AN, ANNEE, Year.

The word *year* is expressed by *an* when it is preceded by the cardinal numbers *one, two, three, four* &c. and by *année* in all others circumstances, even when it is preceded by the ordinal numbers *the first, the second, the third* &c. thus we say:

Il y a deux ans que mon père est mort. and. *Mon père mourut la seconde année de la république.*

There are two years since my father is dead. My father died the second year of the republick.

Toute l'année a été froide. The whole year has been cold. and not *tout l'an*.

However we say. *Tous les ans* not *toutes les années* for the words *every year*. Exam.

Je vais tous les ans en France.

I go every year in France.

2° Jour . . . Journée . . . Day.

3° Matin . . . Matinée . . . Morning.

4° Soir . . . Soirée . . . Evening.

The word *day* is expressed by *jour*; *morning* by *matin* and *evening* by *soir*, when we do not express any particular duration of time: they are expressed by *journée, matinée* and *soirée* when we express a certain duration. Exam.

Les jours sont courts à présent. The days are short now.

J'ai été malade toute la journée.

I have been sick all the day long.

• *Je vais à la chasse tous les matins.*

I go a hunting every morning.

Il a plu toute la matinée. It has rained all the morning.

J'irai vous voir demain au soir.

I will go and see you to morrow evening.

Je passerai la soirée avec vous.

I will spend the evening with you.

5° BATTRE . . . FRAPPER . . . *to beat.*

The verb *to beat* is rendered by *frapper*, when we give but one blow, and by *battre* when we give many; thus *on peut frapper sans battre, mais on ne peut battre sans frapper*. Voy. les synonymes de l'Abbé Girard.

6° COMBAT . . . BATAILLE . . . *Battle.*

The word *battle* is expressed in french by *combat*, when it denotes a private action such as it happens at the passage of a river, at the intercepting of a convoy &c. It is expressed by *bataille*, when it denotes a general action of two armies, such as were *la bataille de Pharsale, la bataille de Fontenoi, la bataille de Jemmapes* &c.

7° CASSER . . . ROMPRE . . . *to Break.*

The verb *to break* is expressed by *casser*, when we break something frail, and by *rompre* when the object is not frail, thus we say,

Vous avez cassé mon verre, and vous avez rompu mon bâton.

You have broke my glass, you have broke my stick.
Not, *vous avez rompu mon verre & cassé mon bâton.*

8° CONNOÎTRE . . . SAVOIR . . . *to Know.*

The verb *to know* is always expressed by *connoître*, when it signifies *to be acquainted with*, and most commonly by *savoir* in all other circumstances; thus we say,

Connoissez-vous cette Dame là? Do you know that Lady?
Savez-vous votre leçon? Do you know your lesson?

9° MARCHER . . . SE PROMENER . . . *to Walk.*

The verb *to walk* is expressed in french by *marcher*, when we walk for business, and by *se promener*, when we walk for pleasure; thus we say,

J'ai été obligé de marcher beaucoup aujourd'hui.
I have been obliged to walk much to day.
Je me suis promené dans le jardin avec mon frère.
I have walked in the garden with my brother.

10° AMENER . . . APPORTER . . . to bring.

The verb to bring is expressed in french by *amener*, when the object can walk, and by *porter*, when it cannot; thus we say,

Amenez votre épouse avec vous. Bring your wife with you.
Apportez moi mes livres. Bring me my books.

11° MENER . . . PORTER . . . to Carry.

The verb to carry is expressed in french by *mener*, when the object can walk, and by *porter*, when it cannot; thus we say,

Menez ce cheval à l'écurie. Carry that horse to the stable.
Portez ce chapeau à votre frère.
Carry that hat to your brother.

12° NEUF . . . NOUVEAU . . . New.

The word new is most commonly expressed by *neuf* or *neuve*, when we speak of material objects; it is always expressed by *nouveau* or *nouvelle*, when we speak of an object which is not material; thus we say,

Un chapeau neuf. Un nouveau projet.
A new hat. A new project.
Une maison neuve. Une nouvelle constitution.
A new house. A new constitution.

13 AVANT . . . DEVANT . . . Before.

The word before is expressed in french by *avant*, when it denotes a priority of time, and by *devant*, when it signifies in presence. Exam.

J'aurai fini avant midi. I shall have done before noon.
Je n'osois paraître devant vous.
I dared not appear before you.

14 DANS . . EN . . In.

The preposition *in* is expressed in french by *dans*, when the noun following is particularised, and by *en* when not. See Wailly pag. 283. Thus we say,

La gloire d'un monarque consiste moins dans la grandeur de ses états que dans le bonheur de ses peuples.

The glory of a king consists less in the extent of his dominions than in the happiness which he procures to his subjects.

Votre frère est en prison. Your brother is in jail. Not, *dans prison.*

If we added an adjective to the word *jail*, then it would be particularised, and the word *in* should be expressed by *dans* and not *en* as: Your brother is in a dark jail. *Votre frère est dans une prison obscure*, not *en prison obscure*. That is the reason why the article is always used after *dans*, according to rule the second and not after *en*, as we said in the rule 18.

Note. *In the* is usually expressed by *au* before a subst. sing. m. and, by *à la* before a subst. f. Exam.

Au commencement. In the beginning.

15° PLUS . . . DAVANTAGE . . . More.

The word *more* is always expressed by *plus*, when it is not at the end of a sentence, and by *davantage* when it is at the end of a sentence affirmative. Exam.

Je suis plus jeune que vous, not *davantage jeune*.

I am younger than you.

Vous n'avez pas de pain, en voulez-vous davantage? not *en voulez-vous plus*.

You have no bread, will you have some more.

When the word *more* is at the end of a sentence negative, it is often indifferently expressed by *plus* or by *davantage*. Ex.

Je ne mangerai plus, or: *je ne mangerai pas davantage*, I will not eat any more.

16° POUR . . . PENDANT . . . For.

The word *for* is expressed in french by *pendant*, when it is followed by a word which denotes a certain duration of

time such as *year, month, day, hour &c.* it is expressed by *pour* in other circumstances, Exam.

J'étudie pendant deux heures tous les jours, not pour deux heures.

I study for two hours every day.

J'ai une lettre pour votre frère.

I have a letter for your brother, ~~not~~ pendant votre frère.

17° SUR . . . DESSUS . . . Upon.

18° SOUS . . . DESSOUS . . . Under.

When the words *upon* and *under* are followed by a noun, they are prepositions and expressed, *upon* by *sur* and *under* by *sous*. Exam.

Votre livre est sur la table. Your book is *upon* the table.

Vos souliers sont sous le lit. Your shoes are *under* the bed.

When the words *upon* and *under* are not followed by a noun, they are adverbs and expressed, *upon* by *dessus*, and *under* by *dessous*. Exam.

Vous croyiez le chien sous le lit, & il étoit dessus.

You thought the dog *under* the bed, and it was *upon* it.

Votre mouchoir n'est pas sur la chaise, mais dessous.

Your handkerchief is not *upon* the chair, but it is *under* it.



AN
ALPHABETICAL LIST
OF THE FRENCH VERBS MOST IN

USE. *

ALL regular Verbs are conjugated after one of the ten following, which are themselves conjugated in full length at the page mentioned after each verb.

1 Parler,	To speak.	See pag. 63.
2 Agir,	To act.	p. 66.
3 Sentir,	To smell	p. 67.
4 Tenir,	To hold.	p. 68.
5 Recevoir,	To receive.	p. 70.
6 Faire,	To do.	p. 71.
7 Craindre,	To fear.	p. 73.
8 Connoître,	To know.	p. 74.
9 Instruire,	To instruct.	p. 75.
10 Vendre,	To sell.	p. 77.

The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 &c. which precede the following verbs, denote of what conjugation they are. Those preceded by the number 1, are conjugated after *parler*; those preceded by the number 2, are conjugated after *agir*, and so on for others.

The letters AC, D, G, which come after the french verbs, denote the case they govern; AC denotes the accusative case,

* OBS. 1°. I have not inserted here the irregular verbs, because they are all mentioned in the table which follows this series. 2°. Some verbs govern different cases, when they are taken in different sense; as I could not insert them all without confusion, I have put after each the case it governs most frequently. 3°. I have given as reflected, only those which are so by their nature, and which are often used as reflected.

to the dative, and to the genitive. Some do not govern any case, and some others are followed by the prepositions *en*, *avec* or *sur*, as you may observe in the following series which is the most useful vocabulary which can be proposed to children.

A

1. Abaisser,	AC.	to bring down.
1. abandonner, da.		to abandon.
10. abattre,	AC.	to pull down.
1. abhorrer;	AC.	to abhor.
1. abjurer,	AC.	to abjure.
2. abolir;	AC.	to abolish.
1. abonder en,		to abound with.
1. s'abonner pour,		to compound for.
1. aborder,	AC.	to land.
1. s'aboucher avec,		to confer with.
2. aboutir, da.		to come to.
1. aboyer,		to bark.
1. abréger,	AC.	to abridge.
1. abreuver,	AC.	to water.
1. abroger,	AC.	to abrogate.
2. abrutir,	AC.	to stupefy.
1. s'absenter, ge.		to absent one's self.
1. absorber,	AC.	to absorb.
4. s'absténir, ge.		to forbear.
1. abuser, ge.		to abuse.
1. accabler; ge.	AC.	to overwhelm.
1. accélérer,	AC.	to accelerate.
1. accentuer,	AC.	to accent.
1. accepter,	AC.	to accept.
1. accompagner,	AC.	to accompany.
2. accomplir,	AC.	to accomplish.
1. accorder, da.	AC.	to grant.
1. s'accorder,		to agree.
1. accoster,	AC.	to accost.
1. accoucher, ge.		to be delivered.
1. accoucher,	AC.	to deliver a woman.
1. s'accouder sur,		to lean upon.
2. accourir,	AC.	to shorten.
1. accoutumer, da.	AC.	to accustom.
1. s'accoutumer, da.		to use one's self.

1. accréditer,	AC.	to give credit.
1. accrocher,	AC.	to hang upon a hook.
8. accroître,	AC.	to increase.
1. accumuler,	AC.	to heap up.
1. accuser, Ge.	AC.	to accuse.
1. acérer,	AC.	to steel.
1. s'acheminer,		to set forward.
1. acheter,	AC.	to buy.
1. achever,	AC.	to finish.
1. acquiescer, Da.		to yield.
1. s'acquitter, Ge.		to discharge.
1. adapter, Da. AC.		to adapt.
1. additionner, Da. AC.		to make an addition.
1. adresser, Da. AC.		to direct.
1. adhérer, Da.		to adhere to.
1. adjuger, Da. AC.		to adjudge.
1. administrer,	AC.	to administer.
1. admirer, Ge. AC.		to admire.
1. s'adonner, Da.		to apply one's self to.
1. adopter, Ge. AC.		to adopt.
1. adorer,	AC.	to adore.
2. adoucir,	AC.	to soften.
1, s'adresser, Da.		to apply one's self
1. affamer,	AC.	to starve.
1. affecter,	AC.	to affect.
1, affectionner,	AC.	to love.
1. affermer,	AC.	to let.
2. affermir,	AC.	to strengthen.
1. afficher,	AC.	to post up.
1. affiler,	AC.	to sharpen.
2. affilier,	AC.	to adopt.
1. affirmer,	AC.	to assert.
1. affliger,	AC.	to afflict.
1. affluer,		to abound.
2. affoiblir,	AC.	to weaken.
2. affranchir,	AC.	to set free.
1. affronter,	AC.	to deceive.
1. s'agenouiller,		to kneel down.
1. aggraver,	AC.	to aggravate.
1. agioter,		to stock-job.
2. agir,		to act.

1. agiter,	ac.	to agitate.
2. aggrandir.	ac.	to enlarge.
1. aggréger,	ac.	to aggregate.
2. s'aguerrir,		to inure one's self.
1. aider,	da.	to help.
2. aigrir,	ac.	to exasperate.
1. aiguilloner,	ac.	to stir up.
1. aiguïser,	ac.	to sharpen.
1. aimer,	ac.	to love.
1. ajouter,	da. ac.	to add.
1. ajuster,	ac.	to fit, to adjust.
1. alarmer,	ac.	to alarm.
1. aliéner,	ac.	to alienate.
1. aligner,	ac.	to square.
1. alaiter,	ac.	to suckle.
1. alléger,	ac.	to alleviate.
1. alléguer,	ac.	to alledge.
1. allier,	da. ac.	to allay.
1. s'allier,	da.	to make an alliance.
1. allumer,	ac.	to light.
1. allonger,	ac.	to lengthen.
1. altérer,	ac.	to adulterate.
1. amasser,	ac.	to heap up.
1. amender,		to grow better.
1. amener,	da. ac.	to bring.
1. ameuter,	ac.	to rise a mob.
2. amollir,	ac.	to mollify.
1. amonceler,	ac.	to heap up.
1. amorcer,	ac.	to allure.
2. amortir,	ac.	to quench.
1. amplifier,	ac.	to amplify.
1. amuser,	ac.	to amuse.
2. anéantir.	ac.	to annihilate.
1. animer,	ac.	to animate.
1. annoncer,	da. ac.	to announce.
1. annuler,	ac.	to abrogate.
2. anoblir,	ac.	to ennoble.
1. anticiper,	ac.	to anticipate.
2. aplanir,	ac.	to level.
1. appaïser,	ac.	to appease.
4. appartenir,	da.	to belong.

2. appauvrir,		to grow poor.
1. appeller,	ac.	to call.
5. appercevoir,	ac.	to perceive.
5. s'apercevoir,	ge.	to perceive.
1. appetisser,	ac.	to diminish.
1. s'appetisser,		to grow short.
2. applatir,	ac.	to make flat.
2. applaudir,	da.	to applaud.
1. appliquer,	da. ac.	to apply.
1. apporter,	da. ac.	to bring.
1. apposer,	ac.	to put in.
1. apprécier,	ac.	to appraise.
1. appréhender,	ac.	to fear.
1. apprêter,	ac.	to prepare.
1. apprivoiser,	ac.	to tame.
1. approcher,	ac.	to approach.
2. approfondir,	ac.	to examine into.
1. approprier,	da. ac.	to appropriate.
1. s'approprier,	ac.	to usurp.
1. approuver,	ge. ac.	to approve.
1. appuyer,	ac.	to prop.
1. s'appuyer sur,		to lean upon.
1. arbitrer,	ac.	to arbitrate.
1. arborer,	ac.	to set up.
1. augmenter,	ac.	to infer.
1. armer,	ce. ac.	to arm.
1. arracher,	ac.	to pull out.
1. arranger,	ac.	to set in order.
1. arrêter,	ac.	to stop.
1. s'arrêter,	da.	to stay.
1. arriver,	da.	to come to.
1. s'arroger,	ac.	to claim to one's-self.
2. arrondir,	ac.	to make round.
1. arroser,	ac.	to water.
1. articuler,	ac.	to articulate.
1. aspirer,	da.	to aim at.
1. assaisonner,	ac.	to season.
1. assassiner,	ac.	to assassinate.
1. assembler,	ac.	to bring together.
1. assiéger,	ac.	to besiege.
1. assigner,	ac.	to assign.

1. affister,	ac.	to relieve.
1. associer,	ac.	to associate.
1. assommer,	ac.	to knock down.
2. assortir,	ac.	to match.
2. assoupir,	ac.	to to make drowsy.
2. s'assoupir,		to fall asleep.
2. assouvir,	ac.	to glut.
2. assujettir,	ac.	to subdue.
1. assurer,	da. ac.	to affirm.
7. astreindre,	da. ac.	to subject.
1. attacher,	ac.	to bind.
1. s'attacher,	da.	to stick.
1. attaquer,	ac.	to attack.
1. s'attaquer,	da.	to stand up against.
7. atteindre,	da.	to reach.
1. atteler,	ac.	to put horses to a coach.
10. attendre,	ac.	to expect.
10. s'attendre,	da.	to hope for.
2. attendrir,	ac.	to soften.
2. s'attendrir,		to be moved.
1. attenter,	ac.	to attempt.
1. atterrer,	ac.	to strike down.
1. attester,	ac.	to attest.
1. attirer,	da. ac.	to attract.
1. s'attirer,	ac.	to draw upon one's-self.
1. attiser,	ac.	to stir up.
1. attraper,	ac.	to catch.
1. attribuer,	da. ac.	to ascribe.
1. attrouper,	ac.	to assemble.
1. s'attrouper,		to troop.
1. avaler,	ac.	to swallow.
2. avertir,	ge. ac.	to warn.
1. aveugler,	ac.	to blind.
1. augmenter,	ac.	to increase.
1. augurer,		to augurate.
2. avilir,	ac.	to disgrace.
1. avorter,		to miscarry.
1. avouer,	da. ac.	to confess.
1. autoriser,	da. ac.	to authorise.

B

1.	Babiller,		to prattle.
1.	badiner,		to joke.
1.	se baigner,		to bath.
1.	bâiller,		to yawn.
1.	baïser,	ac.	to kiss.
1.	baïsser,	ac.	to let down.
1.	se baïsser,		to stoop.
1.	balancer,	ac.	to balance.
1.	balayer,	ac.	to sweep.
1.	balotter,	ac.	to toss.
1.	bander,	ac.	to bend.
2.	bannir,	ge. ac.	to banish.
1.	baptiser,	ac.	to baptise.
1.	barbouiller,	ac.	to daub.
1.	barrer,	ac.	to bar.
1.	barricader,	ac.	to barricade.
1.	bassiner,	ac.	to warm a bed.
1.	bâter,	ac.	to saddle.
2.	bâtir,	ac.	to build.
10.	battre,	ac.	to beat.
1.	bêler,		to bleat.
1.	bercer,	ac.	to lull asleep.
1.	biaiser,		to to use evasions.
1.	biffer,	ac.	to blot out.
1.	blâmer	ge. ac.	to blame.
2.	blanchir,	ac.	to whiten.
1.	blasphêmer,	ac.	to blaspheme.
1.	blesser,	ac.	to wound.
1.	bloquer,	ac.	to block up.
1.	boiser,	ac.	to wainscot.
1.	bombarder,	ac.	to bombard.
2.	bondir,		to jump about.
1.	border,	ac.	to border.
1.	borner,	ac.	to limit.
3.	bouillir,		to boil.
1.	boulangier,	ac.	to bake.
1.	boulverser,	ac.	to overthrow.
1.	bourdonner,		to buzz.
1.	boutonner,	ac.	to button.
1.	branler,	ac.	to shake.

1. brasser,	ac.	to brew.
1. braver,	ac.	to affront.
1. brider,	ac.	to bridle.
1. briguer,	ac.	to sue for an office.
1. briller,		to shine.
1. broder,	ac.	to embroider.
1. broncher,		to stumble.
1. brosser,	ac.	to brush.
1. brouiller,	ac.	to confound.
1. broyer,	ac.	to grind.
1. brûler.	ac.	to burn.
2. brunir,	ac.	to burnish.
1. brusquer,	ac.	to blunt.
1. butiner,		to plunder.

C

1. Cabaler,		to cabal.
1. cacher,	ac.	to hide.
1. cacher,	ac.	to seal up.
1. calciner,	ac.	to calcinate.
1. calmer,	ac.	to calm.
1. calomnier,	ac.	to slander.
1. camper,	ac.	to incamp.
1. canonner,	ac.	to storm.
1. se cantonner,		to vanton.
1. capituler,		to capitulate.
1. caractériser,	ac.	to characterise.
1. carrer,	ac.	to square.
1. casser,	ac.	to break.
1. cathéchiser,	ac.	to instruct.
1. causer,		to prattle.
1. célébrer,	ac.	to celebrate.
1. céder,	da. ac.	to yield.
1. céler,	ac.	to conceal.
1. censurer,	ac.	to censure.
1. certifier,	da. ac.	to certify.
1. cesser,		to cease.
1. chagriner,	ac.	to vex.
1. chanceler,		to stagger.
1. changer,	ac.	to change.

1. chanter,	ac.	to sing.
1. charger,	ge. ac.	to charge.
1. charmer,	ac.	to charm.
1. chasser,	ge. ac.	to expell.
1. chauffer,	ac.	to warm.
1. cheminer,		to walk.
1. chercher,	ac.	to look for.
1. chiffrer,	ac.	to number.
1. choquer,	ac.	to offend.
1. cicatrifer,	ac.	to cicatrise.
1. cimenter,	ac.	to cement.
1. circonftancier,	ac.	to describe.
1. circuler		to circulate.
1. citer,	ac.	to summon.
1. civilifer,	ac.	to civilife.
1. clarifier,	ac.	to clarify.
1. coaguler,	ac.	to coagulate.
1. coller,	ac.	to glue.
1. colorer,	ac.	to colour.
10. combattre,	ac.	to fight.
1. combler,	ac.	to fill up.
1. commander. da,	ac.	to command.
1. commencer,	ac.	to begin.
1. commenter,	ac.	to comment.
1. commercer,		to trade.
1. communiquer. da. ac.		to communicate.
1. comparer, da. ac.		to compare.
2. compatir, ge. da.		to compationate.
1. compenfer,	ac.	to compensate.
1. complimenter,	ac.	to compliment.
1. compofer,	ac.	to compofe.
1. comprimer,	ac.	to fqueeze.
1. compter,	ac.	to count.
1. concentrer,	ac.	to concentre.
1. concerner,	ac.	to concern.
5. concevoir,	ac.	to conceive.
1. concilier,	ac.	to conciliate.
1. condamner, da. ac.		to condemn.
10. condefcendre, ge. ac.		to condefcend.
9. conduire,	ac.	to conduet.
1. confeffer, da. ac.		to confeff.

1. confier,	da. ac.	to trust.
1. confiner,	ac.	to confine.
1. confirmer,	da. ac.	to confirm.
10. confondre,	ac.	to confound.
1. conformer,	da. ac.	to conform.
1. conforter,	ac.	to comfort.
1. confronter,	ac.	to compare.
1. congédier,	ac.	to dismiss.
1. conjecturer,	ac.	to guess.
7. conjoindre,	ac.	to conjoin.
8. connoître,	ac.	to know.
1. consacrer,	ac.	to consecrate.
1. conseiller,	da. ac.	to advise.
3. consentir,	da.	to consent.
1. conserver,	ac.	to preserve.
1. considérer,	ac.	to consider.
1. configner,	ac.	to consign.
1. consister à,		to consist in.
1. consoler,	ac.	to comfort.
1. consolider,	ac.	to consolidate.
1. conspirer contre,		to consplot against.
1. consterner,	ac.	to affright.
1. constiper,	ac.	to constipate.
1. constituer,	ac.	to appoint.
9. construire,	ac.	to build.
1. consulter,	ac.	to consult.
1. consumer,	ac.	to consume.
1. contempler,	ac.	to contemplate.
4. contenir,	ac.	to comprehend.
1. contenter,	ac.	to satisfy.
1. conter,	ac.	to count.
1. contester,	ac.	to contest.
1. continuer,	ac.	to go on.
1. contracter,	ac.	to contract.
7. contraindre,	ac.	to compel.
1. contrarier,	ac.	to contradict.
1. contrebalancer,	ac.	to counterpoise.
6. contrefaire,	ac.	to counterfeit.
1. contremander,	ac.	to countermand.
1. contréminer,	ac.	to countermine.
1. contrefignier,	ac.	to counterfeign.

4. contrevenir,	oe. da.	to infringe.
1. contribuer,	da.	to contribute
1. contrôler,	ac.	to controll.
4. convenir,	oe.	to agree.
1. converser avec,		to converse.
2. convertir,	ac.	to convert.
1. coopérer,	oe. da.	to cooperate.
1. copier,	ac.	to transcribe.
1. corder,	ac.	to twist.
10. correspondre,	oe. da.	to correspond.
1. corriger,	oe. ac.	to correct.
1. corroborer,	ac.	to strengthen.
10. corrompre,	ac.	to corrupt.
1. cotoyer,	ac.	to coast along.
1. coucher,	ac.	to put to bed.
1. se coucher,		to go to bed.
1. couler,		to flow.
1. couper,	ac.	to cut.
1. coûter,	ac.	to cost.
1. couver,	ac.	to brood.
1. cracher,		to spit.
7. craindre,	ac.	to fear.
1. créer,	ac.	to create.
1. créver,		to burst out.
1. creuser,	ac.	to dig.
1. crier,		to cry.
1. critiquer,	ac.	to cavil.
1. croiser,	ac.	to cross.
8. croître,		to increase.

D.

1. Daigner,		to deign.
1. damner,	ac.	to damn.
1. danser,	ac.	to dance.
1. débander,	ac.	to untie.
1. débarquer,	ac.	to disembark.
1. débarrasser,	ac.	to disengage.
1. débarrasser,	ac.	to unbar.
10. débattre,	ac.	to debate.
10. se débattre,		to struggle.

1. débaucher,	ac.	to debauch.
1. débiter,	ac.	to sell.
1. déborder,	ac.	to unborder.
1. se déborder,		to overflow.
1. débotter,	ac.	to pull out one's boots.
1. déboucher,	ac.	to unstop.
1. débourser,	ac.	to disburse.
1. déboutonner,	ac.	to unbutton.
1. débrider,	ac.	to unbridle.
1. débrouiller,	ac.	to clear.
1. débusquer, <i>ge.</i>	ac.	to drive out.
1. décacheter,	ac.	to unseal.
1. décamper,		to run away.
1. décapiter,	ac.	to behead.
1. déceder,		to die.
1. déceler,	ac.	to detect.
1. décerner,	ac.	to decree.
1. déchaîner,	ac.	to let loose.
1. se déchaîner contre,		to inveigh against.
1. décharger,	ac.	to unload.
1. décharner,	ac.	to put the flesh off.
1. déchausser	ac.	to put the stockings off.
1. déchiffrer,	ac.	to decypher.
1. déchiqueter,	ac.	to cut.
1. déchirer,	ac.	to tear off.
1. décider,	ac.	to decide.
1. décimer,	ac.	to decimate.
1. déclamer contre,		to inveigh against.
1. déclarer, <i>da.</i>	ac.	to declare.
1. décliner,		to decay.
1. décoiffer,	ac.	to put off the head-dress.
1. décoller,	ac.	to unglue.
1. décolorer,	ac.	to discolour.
1. décomposer,	ac.	to dissolve.
1. déconcerter,	ac.	to put out.
1. déconter,	ac.	to discount.
1. décorder,	ac.	to untwist.
1. décorer,	ac.	to adorn.
1. découler,		to flow.
1. découper,	ac.	to cut.
1. découpler,	ac.	to uncouple.

1. décourager,	ac.	to discourage.
1. décréditer,	ac.	to discredit.
1. décréter,	ac.	to decree.
1. décrier,	ac.	to discredit.
8. décroître,	ac.	to decrease.
1. décroter,	ac.	to rub off the dirt.
1. dédaigner,	ac.	to despise.
1. dédier,	ac.	to dedicate.
1. dédommager,	ac.	to indemnify.
9. déduire,	ge. ac.	to subtract.
6. défaire,	ac.	to undo.
10. défendre,	da. ac.	to forbid.
1. déférer,	da.	to yield.
1. défier,	ac.	to challenge.
1. se défier,	ge.	to distrust.
1. défigurer,	ac.	to disform.
1. désaler,	ac.	to unstring.
2. définir,	ac.	to define.
2. déflourir,		to let fall its blossom.
1. défoncer,	ac.	to stove a cask.
1. déformer,	ac.	to put out of form.
1. défrayer,	ac.	to defray.
1. défricher,	ac.	to clear.
1. défriser,	ac.	to uncurl.
1. dégager,	ac.	to disengage.
1. dégainer,	ac.	to unsheat a sword.
2. dégarnir,	ac.	to unfurnish.
1. dégeler,		to thaw.
1. dégénérer,		to degenerate.
2. dégourdir,	ac.	to revive.
1. dégoûter, ge.	ac.	to disgust.
1. se dégoûter. ge.		to be weary.
1. dégoutter,		to trickle down.
1. dégrader,	ac.	to degrade.
1. dégraisser,	ac.	to take away the fat.
1. déguiser,	ac.	to dissemble.
1. déjeuner,		to breakfast.
7. déjoindre,	ac.	to disjoin.
1. délacer,	ac.	to unlace.
1. délaisser,	ac.	to abandon.
1. délasser,	ac.	to unweary.

1. délayer,	ac.	to dilute.
1. déléguer,	ac.	to delegate.
1. délibérer,		to deliberate.
1. délier,	ac.	to untie.
1. délivrer,	ge. ac.	to rescue.
1. déloger,		to remove.
1. demander,	pa. ac.	to ask for.
1. démanger,		to itch.
1. démâter,	ac.	to unmast.
1. démêler,	ac.	to disentangle.
3. démentir,	ac.	to give the lie.
1. démeubler,	ac.	to unfurnish.
1. demeurer,		to live or to stay.
2. démolir,	ac.	to demolish.
1. démonter,	ac.	to dismount.
1. démontrer,	ac.	to demonstrate.
1. dénier.	ac.	to deny.
1. dénommer.	ac.	to name.
1. dénoncer.	ac.	to inform against.
1. dénoter,	ac.	to denote.
1. dénouer,	ac.	to untie.
1. dépaqueter,	ac.	to undo a bundle.
1. dépaver,	ac.	to unpave.
1. dépêcher,	ac.	to dispatch.
1. se dépêcher,		to make haste.
7. dépeindre,	ac.	to describe.
10. dépendre,	ge.	to depend.
1. dépenser,	ac.	to spend.
1. dépeupler,	ac.	to depopulate.
1. déplacer,	ac.	to displace.
1. déplanter,	ac.	to displant.
1. déplier,	ac.	to unfold.
1. déplisser,	ac.	to unpleat.
1. déplorer,	ac.	to lament.
1. déplumer,	ac.	to take out the feathers.
2. dépolir,	ac.	to unpolish.
1. déposer,	ac.	to depose.
1. déposséder,	ac.	to dispossess.
1. dépouiller,	ge. ac.	to strip.
1. depraver,	ac.	to deprave.
1. déprimer,	ac.	to depress.

1. députer,	ac.	to depute.
1. déracer,	ac.	to root out.
1. déraisonner,	ac.	to talk nonsense.
1. déranger,	ac.	to disorder.
1. dérégler,	ac.	to disorder.
1. dériver,	ac.	to derive.
1. dérober,	ac.	to steal.
1. déroger,	va.	to derogate.
1. dérouiller,	ac.	to get out the rust.
1. désabuser,	ac.	to undeceive.
1. désapprouver,	ac.	to disapprove.
1. désarmer,	ac.	to disarm.
1. désavouer,	ac.	to disown.
10. descendre,	ac.	to go down.
1. desennuyer,	ac.	to divert.
1. désert,	ac.	to desert.
1. désespérer,	ac.	to despair.
1. déshabiller,	ac.	to undress.
1. se déshabituier,	ac.	to break of one's custom.
1. déshonorer,	ac.	to dishonour.
1. désigner,	ac.	to appoint.
1. désirer,	ac.	to long for.
1. se désister,	ac.	to give over.
2. désobéir,	va.	to disobey.
1. désobliger,	ac.	to displease.
1. désoler,	ac.	to desolate.
1. désorienter,	ac.	to put one out.
1. désoffer,	ac.	to unbone.
1. se désaisir,	ac.	to let a thing go.
1. dessaler,	ac.	to unsalt.
1. dessécher,	ac.	to dry up.
1. desseler,	ac.	to unsaddle.
3. desservir,	ac.	to clear up.
1. dessiner,	ac.	to sketch.
1. dessouder,	ac.	to unsolder.
1. destiner,	va. ac.	to design.
2. désunir,	ac.	to desunite.
1. détacher,	ac.	to untie.
7. déteindre,	ac.	to discolour.
10. détendre,	ac.	to unbend.
1. déterminer,	ac.	to determine.

1. détester,	ac.	to	abhor.
10. détordre,	ac.	to	untwist.
1. détourner, ce.	ac.	to	divert.
1. détremper,	ac.	to	dilute.
1. détromper,	ac.	to	undeceive.
1. détrôner,	ac.	to	unthrone.
9. détruire,	ac.	to	destroy.
1. dévaliser,	ac.	to	strip.
1. dévancer,	ac.	to	out-run.
1. développer,	ac.	to	unfold.
4. devenir,		to	become.
1. déverouiller,	ac.	to	unbolt.
1. dévider,	ac.	to	wind into a chain.
1. deviner,	ac.	to	guess.
1. dévoiler,	ac.	to	unveil.
5. devoir,	da. ac.	to	owe.
1. dévorer,	ac.	to	devour.
1. dévouer,	da. ac.	to	dedicate.
1. dicter,	da. ac.	to	dictate.
1. diffamer,	ac.	to	defame.
1. différer,	ac.	to	differ.
1. digérer,	ac.	to	digest.
1. dilater,	ac.	to	dilate.
1. dimer,	ac.	to	tithe.
1. diminuer,		to	decrease.
1. dîner,		to	dine.
1. diriger,	ac.	to	direct.
1. discerner,	ac.	to	discern.
1. discipliner,	ac.	to	discipline.
1. discontinuer,	ac.	to	cease.
4. disconvenir, ce.		to	disagree.
1. disculper,	ac.	to	justify.
1. discuter,	ac.	to	discuss.
1. disgracier,	ac.	to	turn out of favour.
7. disjoindre,	ac.	to	disjoin.
8. disparaître,		to	vanish away.
1. dispenser, ce.	ac.	to	excuse.
1. disperser,	ac.	to	scatter.
1. disposer,	ac.	to	set in order.
1. disputer,		to	quarrel.
1. disséquer,	ac.	to	dissect.

1. dissimuler,	ac.	<i>to dissimble.</i>
1. dissiper,	ac.	<i>to dissipate.</i>
1. dissuader,	ge. ac.	<i>to dissuade.</i>
1. distiller,	ac.	<i>to distill.</i>
1. distinguer,	ge. ac.	<i>to discern.</i>
1. divaguer,		<i>to ramble.</i>
2. divertir,	ac.	<i>to divert.</i>
1. diviser,	ac.	<i>to divide.</i>
1. divulguer,	ac.	<i>to publish.</i>
1. dogmatifer,		<i>to dogmatise.</i>
1. dominer,		<i>to sway.</i>
1. dompter,	ac.	<i>to subdue.</i>
1. donner,	na. ac.	<i>to give.</i>
3. dormir,		<i>to sleep.</i>
1. doter,	ac.	<i>to give a portion.</i>
1. doubler,	ac.	<i>to line, to double.</i>
1. douer,	ac.	<i>to endow.</i>
1. douter,	ge.	<i>to question.</i>
1. dresser,	ac.	<i>to make straight.</i>
2. durcir,	ac.	<i>to harden.</i>
1. durer,		<i>to last.</i>

E

1. éblouir,	ac.	<i>to dazzle.</i>
1. ébranler,	ac.	<i>to shake.</i>
1. écarter,	ac.	<i>to drive away.</i>
1. échanger,	ac.	<i>to exchange.</i>
1. échapper,		<i>to escape.</i>
1. échauffer,	ac.	<i>to warm.</i>
1. échouer,		<i>to run on shore.</i>
1. éclabousser,	ac.	<i>to dash.</i>
2. éclaircir,	ac.	<i>to clear.</i>
1. éclairer,	ac.	<i>to light.</i>
1. éclater,	ac.	<i>to burst.</i>
1. s'éclipser,		<i>to disappear.</i>
9. éconduire	ac.	<i>to refuse.</i>
1. écorcher,	ac.	<i>to skin.</i>
1. s'écouler,		<i>to flow out.</i>
1. écouter,	ac.	<i>to listen.</i>
1. écraser,	ac.	<i>to bruise.</i>

1. écrouter,	ac.	to chip bread.
1. écumer,		to foam.
1. édifier,	ac.	to edify.
1. effacer,	ac.	to blot out.
1. effectuer,	ac.	to put in execution.
1. éfiler	ac.	to unravel.
1. effleurer,	ac.	to touch slightly.
1. effrayer,	ac.	to fright.
1. égaler,	ac.	to equal.
1. égorger,	ac.	to cut the throat.
1. élaguer,	ac.	to prune.
1. s'élancer sur,		to leap upon.
2. élargir,	ac.	to widen.
1. élever,		to raise, to educate.
1. éloigner,	ac.	to remove.
1. embarquer,	ac.	to embark.
1. embarrasser,	ac.	to perplex.
1. embaumer,	ac.	to embalm.
2. embellir,		to embellish.
1. embraser,	ac.	to set on fire.
1. embrasser,	ac.	to embrace.
1. s'émerveiller	ge.	to wonder at.
1. emmenoter,	ac.	to manacle.
1. émonder,	ac.	to prune.
1. émousser,	ac.	to blunt.
5. émouvoir,	ac.	to move.
1. empailler,	ac.	to cover with straw.
1. empaqueter,	ac.	to pack up.
1. s'emparer,	ge.	to seize upon.
1. empêcher,	ac.	to hinder.
1. emperer,	ac.	to starch.
2. emplir,	ac.	to fill up.
1. employer,	ac.	to employ.
1. empoisonner,	ac.	to poison.
1. emporter,	ac.	to carry away.
1. s'emporter,		to fall into a passion.
1. s'empresse,		to be eager.
1. emprisonner,		to put in jail.
1. emprunter,	ge. ac.	to borrow.
1. encaver,	ac.	to put in a cellar.
1. encenser,	ac.	to cense.

1. enchaîner,	ac.	to put in chain.
1. enchanter,	ac.	to charm.
2. enchérir,		to raise.
1. encourager,	ac.	to encourage.
1. s'endetter,		to run into debts.
3. s'endormir,		to fall asleep.
1. endurer,	ac.	to suffer.
1. enfanter,	ac.	to bring forth a child.
1. enfermer,	ac.	to shut in.
1. enfiler,	ac.	to thread.
1. enflammer,	ac.	to set on fire.
1. enfler,		to swell.
1. enfoncer,		to sink.
7. enfreindre,	ce. ac.	to transgress.
1. enfumer,		to smoke.
1. engager,	ac.	to persuade.
1. engendrer,	ac.	to beget.
2. engloutir,	ac.	to swallow.
1. engraisser,	ac.	to fatten.
2. s'enhardir,		to grow bold.
7. enjoindre	da. ac.	to order.
1. s'enivrer,		to make one's self drunk.
1. enlever,	ac.	to take away.
1. s'ennuyer	ce.	to be weary.
2. s'enorgueillir,		to be proud.
1. s'enraciner		to take root.
1. enrager,		to enrage.
1. enregistrer,	ac.	to register.
1. s'enrhumer,		to catch a cold.
2. s'enrichir,		to grow rich.
1. enrôler,	ac.	to enlist.
1. ensanglanter,	ac.	to make bloody.
1. enseigner,	da. ac.	to teach.
1. ensementer,	ac.	to sow.
2. ensevelir,	ac.	to bury.
1. entasser,	ac.	to heap up.
10. entendre	ac.	to hear.
1. enterrer,	ac.	to bury.
1. s'entêter,		to be infatuated.
1. entraîner,	ac.	to drag away.
1. entraver,	ac.	to fetter.

1. entrelacer,	ac.	to intermingle.
1. entremêler,	ac.	to intermix.
1. entrer,		to get in.
4. entretenir,	ac.	to keep.
4. s'entretenir avec,		to discourse with.
2. envahir,	ac.	to invade.
1. envelopper,	ac.	to fold up.
1. envenimer,	ac.	to poison.
1. envier,	ac.	to envy.
1. environner,	ac.	to encompass.
1. envisager,	ac.	to look in the face.
1. s'envoler,		to fly away.
1. épaissir,	ac.	to thicken.
2. s'épanouir,		to spring out.
1. épargner,	da. ac.	to spare.
1. épeler,	ac.	to spell.
1. épicer,	ac.	to spice.
1. épier,		to ear.
1. épier,	ac.	to spy.
1. ép pointer,	ac.	to blunt.
1. époudrer,	ac.	to wipe the dust off.
1. épouser,	ac.	to marry.
1. épouvanter,	ac.	to terrify.
1. éprouver,	ac.	to try.
1. épuiser,	ac.	to empty.
1. épurer,	ac.	to refine.
1. équiper,	ac.	to equip.
1. ériger,	ac.	to erect.
1. errer,		to ramble.
1. escalader,	ac.	to scale.
1. escamoter,	ac.	to secure a dice.
1. escarmoucher,		to skirmish.
1. escompter,	ac.	to discount.
1. escrimer,		to fence.
1. escroquer,	ac.	to sharp, to trick.
1. espérer,	ac.	to hope.
1. espionner,	ac.	to be a spy.
1. s'esquiver,		to steal away.
1. essayer,	ac.	to try.
1. essuyer,	ac.	to wipe off.
1. estimer,	ac.	to value.

1. estropier,	ac.	to lame.
2. établir,	ac.	to establish.
1. étaler,	ac.	to display.
1. étaler,	ac.	to expose to sale.
1. étancher,	ac.	to quench.
7. éteindre,	ac.	to extinguish.
10. étendre,	ac.	to spread.
1. éternuer,		to sneeze.
1. étiquetter,	ac.	to title.
1. étonner,	ac.	to surprise.
1. s'étonner,	ce.	to wonder at.
1. étouffer,	ac.	to stifle.
2. étourdir,	ac.	to stun.
1. étrangler,	ac.	to stifle to death.
2. étrécir,	ac.	to make narrow.
1. étudier,	ac.	to study.
1. évacuer,	ac.	to evacuate.
1. s'évader,		to steal away.
1. évaluer,	ac.	to value.
2. s'évanouir,		to faint away.
1. s'évaporer,		to evaporate.
1. éveiller,	ac.	to awake.
1. éviter,	ac.	to shun.
1. exagérer,	ac.	to exaggerate.
1. exalter,	ac.	to exalt.
1. examiner,	ac.	to inquire into.
1. exaucer,	ac.	to grant.
1. excéder,	ac.	to exceed.
1. excepter,	ac.	to except.
1. exciter,	da. ac.	to incite.
1. excommunier,	ac.	to excommunicate.
1. excuser,	ac.	to excuse.
1. exécuter,	ge. ac.	to execute.
1. exercer,	ac.	to exercise.
1. exhorter,	da. ac.	to exhort.
1. exiler,	ac.	to banish.
1. exister,		to exist.
1. s'expatrier,		to quit one's own country.
1. expédier,	ac.	to dispatch.
1. expier,	ac.	to atone.
1. expirer,		to expire, to die.

1. expliquer,	da. ac.	to explain.
1. exposer,	ac.	to expose.
1. exprimer,	ac.	to express.
1. expulser,	ge. ac.	to turn out.
1. exterminer,	ac.	to exterminate.
1. extirper,	ac.	to root out.

F

1. Fabriquer,	ac.	to manufacture.
1. fâcher,	ac.	to vex.
1. se fâcher,		to be angry.
1. faciliter,	da. ac.	to facilitate.
1. façonner,	ac.	to fashion,
6. faire,	ac.	to make, or to do.
1. falsifier,	ac.	to counterfeit.
1. se familiariser,		to grow familiar.
2. farcir,	ac.	to stuff.
1. se farder,		to paint.
1. fatiguer,	ac.	to tire.
1. favoriser,	ac.	to favour.
7. feindre,		to dissemble.
10. fendre,	ac.	to split, or cleave.
1. fermenter,		to ferment.
1. fermer,	ac.	to shut up,
1. ferrer un cheval,		to shoe a horse.
1. se fier,	da.	to trust to.
1. se figer,		to congeal.
1. figurer,	ac.	to represent.
1. se figurer,	ac.	to fancy.
1. filer,	ac.	to spin.
1. filtrer,	ac.	to filtrate.
2. finir,	ac.	to make an end.
1. flamber,		to blaze.
2. fléchir,	ge. ac.	to soften.
2. flétrir,		to fade away.
2. fleurir,		to bloom.
1. flotter,		to float.
1. fomenter,	ac.	to foment,
10. se fondre,		to melt.
1. forcer,	da. ac.	to compell.

1. forger,	ac.	<i>to hammer.</i>
1. se formaliser,	ge.	<i>to find fault.</i>
1. former,	ac.	<i>to form.</i>
1. fortifier,	ac.	<i>to strengthen.</i>
1. foudroyer,	ac.	<i>to storm.</i>
1. fouetter,	ac.	<i>to whip.</i>
1. fouler aux pieds,	ac.	<i>to trample upon.</i>
2. fournir,	ac.	<i>to furnish.</i>
1. frapper,	ac.	<i>to strike.</i>
2. frémir,		<i>to tremble.</i>
1. fréquenter,	ac.	<i>to haunt.</i>
1. friser.	ac.	<i>to curl.</i>
1. frissonner,		<i>to shiver.</i>
2. se refroidir,		<i>to grow cold.</i>
1. froisser,	ac.	<i>to bruise.</i>
1. frotter,	ac.	<i>to rub.</i>
1. frustrer,	ge. ac.	<i>to disappoint.</i>
1. fumer,	ac.	<i>to smoke.</i>

G

1. Gager,	ac.	<i>to lay wages.</i>
1. gagner,	ac.	<i>to win.</i>
1. galoper,		<i>to gallop.</i>
1. se gangréner,		<i>to gangrene.</i>
1. garder,	ac.	<i>to keep.</i>
2. garnir,	ac.	<i>to furnish.</i>
1. garrotter,	ac.	<i>to tie fast.</i>
1. gâter,	aa.	<i>to spoil.</i>
1. geler,		<i>to freeze.</i>
2. gémir,		<i>to groan.</i>
1. gesticuler,		<i>to be full of action.</i>
1. glacer,		<i>to freeze.</i>
1. glaner,		<i>to glean.</i>
1. glisser,		<i>to slide.</i>
1. se glisser,		<i>to creep in.</i>
1. goûter,	ac.	<i>to taste.</i>
1. gouverner,	ac.	<i>to rule.</i>
2. grandir,		<i>to grow tall.</i>
1. gratter,	ac.	<i>to scratch.</i>
1. graver	ac.	<i>to engrave.</i>

1. grêler,		<i>to hail.</i>
1. griller,	ac.	<i>to broil.</i>
1. griller,	ac.	<i>to grate up.</i>
1. grincer des dents,		<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
1. gronder,	ac.	<i>to scold at.</i>
2. se grossir,		<i>to grow big.</i>
2. guérir,	ac.	<i>to cure.</i>
2. se guérir,		<i>to recover.</i>
1. guider,	ac.	<i>to guide.</i>

H

1. Habiller,	ac.	<i>to cloth, to dress.</i>
1. s'habiller,		<i>to dress one's-self.</i>
1. habiter,	ac.	<i>to live in.</i>
1. s'habituier,	na.	<i>to get an habit.</i>
1. haranguer,		<i>to make a speech.</i>
1. hazarder,	ac.	<i>to venture.</i>
1. se hâter,		<i>to make haste.</i>
1. hériter,	ge.	<i>to inherit.</i>
1. hésiter,		<i>to hesitate.</i>
1. honorer,	ac.	<i>to honour.</i>
1. humilier,	ac.	<i>to humble.</i>

I

1. Jardiner,		<i>to dress a garden.</i>
1. idolâtrer,		<i>to worship idols.</i>
1. jeter,	ac.	<i>to throw.</i>
1. jeûner,		<i>to fast.</i>
1. ignorer,	ac.	<i>to be ignorant.</i>
1. illuminer,	ac.	<i>to illuminate.</i>
1. s'imaginer,	ac.	<i>to fancy.</i>
1. imbiber,	ac.	<i>to imbibe.</i>
1. s'immiscer,	ac.	<i>to intermeddle.</i>
1. immoler,	na. ac.	<i>to sacrifice.</i>
1. immortaliser,	ac.	<i>to immortalise.</i>
1. impatienter,	ac.	<i>to tire out one's patience.</i>
1. implorer,	ge. ac.	<i>to implore.</i>
1. importuner,	ac.	<i>to be troublesome.</i>

L I

1.	imposer,	ac.	to lay on.
1.	imprimer,	ac.	to print.
1.	imputer, da.	ac.	to impute.
1.	incliner, da.		to incline.
1.	incommoder,	ac.	to disturb.
1.	incorporer,	ac.	to incorporate.
1.	inculquer,	ac.	to inculcate.
1.	indemniser, ge.	ac.	to indemnify.
1.	indiquer, da.	ac.	to shew.
1.	indisposer,	ac.	to alienate.
1.	infecter,	ac.	to infect.
1.	infester,	ac.	to infest.
1.	influencer sur,		to influence.
1.	informer, ge.	ac.	to inform.
1.	infuser,		to infuse.
1.	s'ingérer dans,		to intermeddle with.
1.	inhumer,	ac.	to bury.
1.	injurier,	ac.	to abuse.
1.	innover,		to innovate.
1.	inonder,		to overflow.
1.	inquiéter,	ac.	to trouble.
1.	s'insinuer,		to steal in
1.	insinuer,	ac.	to insinuate.
1.	inspirer,	ac.	to inspire with.
1.	instituer,	ac.	to appoint.
9.	instruire,	ac.	to teach.
1.	insulter, ge.	da.	to insult.
1.	intercéder pour,		to intercede.
1.	intercepter,	ac.	to intercept.
1.	s'interposer,		to intermeddle.
1.	interpréter,	ac.	to explain.
1.	interroger,	ac.	to ask question.
10.	interrompre,	ec.	to interrupt.
4.	intervenir,		to intervene.
1.	intimider,	ac.	to fright.
1.	intituler,	ac.	to intitle.
1.	intriguer,		to cabal.
9.	introduire,	ac.	to introduce.
1.	invectiver contre,		to inveigh against.
1.	inventer,	ac.	to find out.
2.	investir,	ac.	to invest.

1. inviter,	ac.	to invite
1. invoquer,	ac.	to invoke
7. joindre,	ac.	to join.
1. jouer	ge. da. ac.	to play.
2. jouir,	ge.	to enjoy.
1. irriter,	ac.	to exasperate.
1. juger,	ac.	to judge.
1. justifier,	ac.	to justify.

L

1. Labourer,	ac.	to plough.
1. lacer,	ac.	to lace.
1. lâcher,	ac.	to loosen.
1. laisser,	ac.	to leave.
1. lambrisser,	ac.	to wainscot.
1. lamenter,	ac.	to bemoan.
1. lancer,	ac.	to fling.
2. languir,		to languish.
1. larder,	ac.	to lard.
1. lasser,	ac.	to weary.
1. laver,	ac.	to wash.
1. légitimer,	ac.	to legitimate.
1. léguer	ac.	to leave by will.
1. se lever,		to rise.
1. lier,	ac.	to tie.
1. se liguer contre,		to enter into a ligue.
1. limer,	ac.	to file off.
1. limiter,	ac.	to limit.
1. liquéfier,	ac.	to liquefy.
1. livrer,	da. ac.	to deliver.
1. loger,	ac.	to lodge, to dwell.
1. loucher,		to squint.
1. louer,	ac.	to praise.
1. luire,		to shine.
9. luter contre,		to struggle with.
1. luter,		to wrestle.

M

1. Mâcher,	ac.	to shew.
1. maçonner,	ac.	to build.

2.	maigrir,		<i>to grow lean.</i>
4.	maintenir,	ac.	<i>to maintain.</i>
1.	maitriser,	ac.	<i>to subdue.</i>
1.	maltraiter,	ac.	<i>to use ill.</i>
1.	mander,	ac.	<i>to send for.</i>
1.	manger,	ac.	<i>to eat.</i>
1.	manier,	ac.	<i>to handle.</i>
1.	manifester,	ac.	<i>to reveal.</i>
1.	manquer,	ac.	<i>to miss.</i>
1.	manquer,	ge.	<i>to want.</i>
1.	marchander,		<i>to cheapen.</i>
1.	marcher,		<i>to walk.</i>
1.	marier,	ac.	<i>to marry.</i>
1.	se marier,		<i>to marry.</i>
1.	mariner,	ac.	<i>to pickle.</i>
1.	marquer,	ac.	<i>to mark.</i>
1.	massacrer,	ac.	<i>to massacre.</i>
8.	se méconnoître,		<i>to forget one's-self.</i>
8.	méconnoître,	ac.	<i>to take for another.</i>
1.	méditer,	ac.	<i>to meditate.</i>
1.	se méfier,	ge.	<i>to distrust.</i>
1.	mélanger,	ac.	<i>to mix together.</i>
1.	mêler,	ac.	<i>to mix.</i>
1.	ménacer,	ge. ac.	<i>to threaten.</i>
1.	ménager,	ac.	<i>to spare.</i>
3.	mentir,		<i>to tell lies.</i>
1.	mépriser,	ac.	<i>to despise.</i>
1.	mériter,	ac.	<i>to deserve.</i>
1.	mésurer,	ac.	<i>to measure.</i>
1.	métamorphoser,	ac.	<i>to metamorphose.</i>
1.	meubler,	ac.	<i>to furnish.</i>
2.	meurtrir,	ac.	<i>to bruise.</i>
1.	miauler,		<i>to mew.</i>
1.	modérer,	ac.	<i>to moderate.</i>
1.	moissonner,	ac.	<i>to harvest.</i>
1.	molester,	ac.	<i>to grieve.</i>
1.	monter,		<i>to get up.</i>
1.	se moquer,	ge.	<i>to laugh at.</i>
1.	moraliser,		<i>to moralise.</i>
10.	mordre,	ac.	<i>to bite.</i>
1.	moucheter,		<i>to spot.</i>

1. murer,	ac.	to wall up.
1. mûrir,		to ripen.
1. murmurer,		to mutter.

N

1. Nager,		to swim.
1. nécessiter,	ac.	to compell.
1. négliger,	ac.	to neglect.
1. négocier,		to trade.
1. neiger,		to snow.
1. nettoyer,	ac.	to clean.
2. noircir,	ac.	to blacken.
1. nommer,	ac.	to name.
1. noter,	ac.	to note.
1. nouer,	ac.	to tie.
2. nourrir,	ac.	to feed.
1. noyer,	ac.	to drown.
1. se noyer,		to be drowned.
1. nuancer,	ac.	to shadow.
9. nuire,	da.	to hurt.

O.

2. Obéir,	da.	to obey.
1. objecter,	da. ac.	to object.
1. obliger,	ac.	to oblige.
2. obscurcir,	ac.	to darken.
1. obséder,	ac.	to beset.
1. observer,	ac.	to observe.
1. s'obstiner,	da.	to be obstinate.
4. obtenir,	ge. ac.	to obtain.
1. obvier,	da.	to obviate.
1. occuper,	ac.	to employ.
1. offenser,	ac.	to offend.
1. offusquer,	ac.	to dim.
1. ombrager,	ac.	to shadow.
1. opiner,		to vote.
1. s'opiniâtrer,		to be obstinate.
1. s'opposer,	da.	to be against.
1. opprimer,	ac.	to oppress.

1. opter,		<i>to chuse.</i>
1. ordonner,	da. ac.	<i>to order.</i>
1. orner,	ac.	<i>to adorn.</i>
1. orthographier,		<i>to spell.</i>
1. ôser.	ac.	<i>to dare.</i>
1. ôter,	ac.	<i>to take away.</i>
1. oublier,	ac.	<i>to forget.</i>
2. ourdir,	ac.	<i>to weave.</i>
1. outrager,	ac.	<i>to affront.</i>

P

1. Pacifier,	ac.	<i>to pacify.</i>
1. pallier,	ac.	<i>to palliate.</i>
1. panser une plaie,		<i>to dress a wound.</i>
1. paraphraser,	ac.	<i>to comment upon.</i>
1. pardonner,	ac.	<i>to forgive.</i>
1. parier,	ac.	<i>to bet.</i>
1. parler,	da.	<i>to speak.</i>
3. paroître,		<i>to appear.</i>
1. parquer,	ac.	<i>to fold.</i>
1. parfûmer,		<i>to stre-w.</i>
1. partager,	ac.	<i>to share.</i>
3. partir		<i>to set out.</i>
4. parvenir,	da.	<i>to arrive at.</i>
1. patienter,		<i>to take patience.</i>
1. patiner,		<i>to skate.</i>
1. paver,	ac.	<i>to pave.</i>
1. payer,	da. ac.	<i>to pay.</i>
1. pêcher,		<i>to sin,</i>
1. pêcher,	ac.	<i>to fish.</i>
7. peindre,	ac.	<i>to paint.</i>
1. peler,	ac.	<i>to peel.</i>
1. pencher sur,		<i>to lean upon.</i>
10. pendre,		<i>to hang.</i>
1. pénétrer dans,		<i>to get into.</i>
1. penser,	da.	<i>to think of.</i>
1. percer,		<i>to pierce.</i>
10. perdre,	ac.	<i>to lose.</i>
1. persuader,	da. ac.	<i>to persuade.</i>
2. pervertir,	ac.	<i>to pervert.</i>

1. péser,	ac.	to weigh.
1. pétrifier,	ac.	to petrify.
1. peupler,	ac.	to people.
1. piler,	ac.	to bruise.
1. piller,		to plunder.
1. pincer,	ac.	to pinch.
1. piquer,	ac.	to prick.
1. se piquer,	ge.	to pretend to.
1. placer,	ac.	to place.
7. plaindre,	ac.	to pity.
7. se plaindre,	ge.	to complain.
1. planter,	ac.	to plant.
1. plâtrer,	ac.	to plaster.
1. pleurer,		to cry.
1. plier,	ac.	to plait, to bend.
1. plisser,	ac.	to plait.
1. plomber,	ac.	to lead.
1. plonger,	ac.	to plunge.
1. ployer,	ac.	to fold up.
1. poignarder,	ac.	to stab.
1. poivrer,	ac.	to pepper.
1. polisser,	ac.	to polish.
2. polir,	ac.	to burnish.
1. pomper,	ac.	to pump.
1. ponctuer,	ac.	to point.
10. pondre,	ac.	to lay eggs.
1. porter,	da. ac.	to carry.
1. poser,	ac.	to lay.
1. posséder,	ac.	to possess.
1. poudrer,	ac.	to powder.
1. pousser,	ac.	to thrust, push.
1. pratiquer,	ac.	to practise.
1. précéder,	ac.	to precede.
1. prêcher,	ac.	to preach.
1. prédominer,	ac.	to predominate.
1. préférer,	da. ac.	to prefer.
1. préjudicier,	ac.	to prejudice.
1. prélever,	ac.	to deduct.
1. préméditer,	ac.	to premeditate.
1. préparer,	ac.	to prepare.
1. préposer,	da. ac.	to set over.

1.	présager,	ac.	to portend.
1.	présenter,	ac.	to offer.
1.	préserver,	ac.	to preserve.
1.	présider,	da.	to preside.
3.	présentir,	ac.	to foresee.
1.	presser,	ac.	to press or squeeze.
1.	présumer,	ac.	to presume.
10.	prétendre,	da.	to claim at.
1.	prêter,	da. ac.	to lend.
4.	prévenir,	ac.	to prevent.
1.	prier,	ge. ac.	to pray.
1.	priver,	ge. ac.	to deprive
1.	proclamer,	ac.	to proclaim.
1.	procurer,	da. ac.	to procure.
1.	prodiguer,	ac.	to lavish.
9.	produire,	ac.	to produce.
1.	profaner,	ac.	to profane.
1.	proférer,	ac.	to utter.
1.	professer,	ac.	to profess.
1.	profiter,		to improve.
1.	projetter,	ac.	to intend.
1.	prolonger,	ac.	to prolong.
1.	se promener,		to walk.
1.	prononcer,	ac.	to pronounce.
1.	propager,	ac.	to propagate.
1.	prophétiser,	ac.	to foretell.
1.	proposer	da. ac.	to propose.
1.	prosperer,		to prosper.
1.	se prosterner,		to prostrate one's-self.
1.	protéger,	ac.	to protect,
1.	protester contre,		to protest,
4.	provenir,	ge.	to proceed,
1.	purger,	ac.	to purge,
1.	purifier,	ac.	to purify,
1.	se putréfier,		to rot,

Q.

1.	Qualifier,	ac.	to qualify,
1.	quereller,	ac.	to scold at,
1.	quéter,	ac.	to beg, to quest,

R

1. Rabaisser,	ac.	to abate.
1. racommoder,	ac.	to mend.
1. racheter,	ac.	to redeem.
1. racheter,	ac.	to buy again.
1. raconter,	ac.	to relate.
2. se radoucir,		to be appeased.
2. raffermir,	ac.	to strengthen.
1. raffiner,	ac.	to refine.
2. rafraîchir,	ac.	to cool.
1. raisonner,		to reason.
2. ralentir,	ac.	to relent.
1. rallier,	ac.	to rally.
1. rallumer,	ac.	to kindle again.
1. ramasser,	ac.	to gather.
1. ramener, na.	ac.	to bring back.
2. ramollir,		to soften.
1. ramper,		to crawl.
1. rançonner,	ac.	to ransom.
1. ranger,	ac.	to set in order.
1. ranimer,	ac.	to revive.
1. râper,	ac.	to grate.
1. rappeler,	ac.	to call again.
1. rapporter, na.	ac.	to bring back.
1. rapprocher,	ac.	to draw near again.
1. rarefier,	ac.	to rarefy.
1. raser,	ac.	to shave.
1. rassasier,	ac.	to satisfy.
1. rassembler,	ac.	to join together.
1. rassurer,	ac.	to encourage.
1. ratifier,	ac.	to ratify.
1. ratifier,	ac.	to scrape.
1. rattacher,		to tie again.
1. raturer,	ac.	to scratch out.
1. ravager,	ac.	to lay waste.
2. ravir,	ac.	to ravish.
1. rayer,	ac.	to bar.
1. réaliser,		to make real.
1. réassigner,	ac.	to assign anew.

M m

2.	rebâtir,	ac.	to rebuild.
1.	rebaptiser,	ac.	to rebaptise.
2.	reblanchir,	ac.	to wash again.
2.	rebondir,		to rebound.
1.	reborder,	ac.	to new border.
1.	reboucher,	ac.	to stop again.
1.	rebrider,	ac.	to bridle again.
1.	rebuter,	ac.	to reject.
1.	recacher,	ac.	to seal up again.
1.	recéler,	ac.	to conceal.
5.	recevoir,	ac.	to receive.
1.	rechanger,	ac.	to change again.
1.	recharger,	ac.	to load again.
1.	réchauffer,	ac.	to warm again.
1.	rechercher,	ac.	to seek again.
1.	réciter,	ac.	to rehearse.
1.	réclamer,	ac.	to claim.
1.	récoller,	ac.	to glue again.
1.	recommander,	ac.	to recommend.
1.	récompenser,	ac.	to reward.
1.	récomposer,	ac.	to compose again.
1.	réconcilier,	ac.	to reconcile.
9.	reconduire,	ac.	to wait upon one back.
8.	reconnoître,	ac.	to know again.
8.	se reconnoître,		to come to one's self.
1.	reconter,	ac.	to tell over again.
1.	recopier,	ac.	to write fair again.
1.	recouvrer,		to recover.
1.	récréer,	ac.	to recreate.
1.	se récrier,		to exclaim.
1.	récriminer,		to recriminate.
1.	recruter,	ac.	to recruit.
1.	rectifier,	ac.	to rectify.
1.	reculer,		to draw back.
1.	récusar,	ac.	to except against.
7.	refaire,	ac.	to undo again.
1.	redemander,	ac.	to ask again.
10.	redescendre,		to come down again.
5.	redevoir,	da. ac.	to owe still.
1.	rediger,	ac.	to put in order.
1.	redonner,	da. ac.	to give again.

1. redonder,		to be superfluous.
1. redorer,	ac.	to new-gild.
1. redoubler,	ac.	to new-line.
1. redoubler,		to redouble.
1. redouter,	ac.	to dread.
1. redresser,	ac.	to make straight.
9. réduire,	ac.	to reduce.
1. réédifier,	ac.	to build up again.
6. refaire,	ac.	to do over again.
1. référer,	ac.	to refer.
2. réfléchir sur,		to reflect.
1. refluer,		to run back.
10. refondre,	ac.	to melt again.
1. réformer,	ac.	to reform.
1. refortifier,	ac.	to new-fortify.
1. réfréner,	ac.	to refrain.
2. refroidir,	ac.	to cool.
1. se réfugier,	ac.	to take sanctuary.
1. refuser,	da. ac.	to refuse.
3. réfuter,	ac.	to refute.
1. regagner,	ac.	to get again.
1. régaler,	ac.	to entertain.
1. regarder,	ac.	to look upon.
2. regarnir,	ac.	to furnish again.
1. regeler,		to freeze again.
1. régénérer,	ac.	to regenerate.
2. régir,	ac.	to govern.
1. régler,	ac.	to rule.
1. régner,		to reign.
1. régorgé,		to overflow.
1. regrater,	ac.	to scratch again.
1. regretter,	oe. ac.	to lament.
1. réhabiliter,	ac.	to rehabilitate.
8. rehausser,		to raise.
1. rejaillir,		to spurt up.
1. rejeter,	oe. ac.	to reject.
1. réintégrer,	ac.	to restore.
7. rejoindre,	ac.	to join again.
2. se rejouir,		to rejoice.
1. réitérer,	ac.	to repeat.
1. relâcher,	ac.	to slacken.

2. rélargir,		to make wider again.
1. relaver,	ac.	to wash again.
1. reléguer,	ac.	to banish.
1. relever,	ac.	to raise up again.
1. relier,	ac.	to bind.
9. reluire,		to glitter.
1. remander,	ac.	to send word again.
1. remarier,		to marry again.
1. remarquer,	ac.	to observe.
1. remballer,	ac.	to pack up again.
1. rembarquer,	ac.	to embark again.
1. rembourser,	ac.	to reimburse.
1. remêler,	ac.	to shuffle again.
1. remener,	ac.	to carry back.
1. rémercier,	ac.	to thank.
1. remésurer,	ac.	to measure again.
1. remédier,	da.	to remedy.
1. remeubler,	ac.	to furnish again.
1. remonter,		to get up again.
1. remontrer,	da. ac.	to remonstrate.
1. rempaqueter,	ac.	to pack up again.
1. remplacer,	ac.	to replace.
2. remplir,	ac.	to fill up.
1. se remplumer,		to new feather.
1. remporter,	ac.	to carry back.
1. remprunter,	ac.	to borrow again.
1. remuer,	ac.	to move.
1. renchainer,	ac.	to chain up again.
2. renchérir,		to raise.
1. rencontrer,	ac.	to meet with.
3. se rendormir,		to fall asleep again.
10. rendre,	da. ac.	to return.
9. rendreire,	ac.	to new plaster.
1. renfermer,	ac.	to shut up again.
1. renfler,		to swell again.
1. renforcer,	ac.	to fortify.
1. rengainer,	ac.	to sheath.
1. renier,	ac.	to disown.
1. renoncer,	da.	to renounce.
1. renouer,	ac.	to tie again.
1. renouveler,	ac.	to renew.

1. rentrer,	ac.	to endow.
1. rentrer,		to come in again.
1. renverser,	ac.	to throw down.
10. répandre,	ac.	to spill, to spread.
1. réparer,	ac.	to repair.
8. reparoître,		to appear again.
3. répartir,	ac.	to divide again.
2. répartir,		to reply.
3. repartir,		to go back again.
1. repasser,	ac.	to iron.
1. repasser,	ac.	to cross again.
1. repenser,	da.	to remind.
3. se repentir,	ge.	to repent.
1. répéter,	ac.	to repeat.
1. repeupler,	ac.	to repopulate.
1. remplacer,	ac.	to place again.
1. replanter,	ac.	to plant again.
1. replier,	ac.	to fold again.
1. répliquer,	da. ac.	to reply.
1. replisser,	ac.	to plait again.
1. replonger,	ac.	to dip again.
1. repolir,	ac.	to polish again.
10. répondre,	ac.	to answer.
1. reporter,	ac.	to carry back.
1. se reposer,		to rest.
1. repousser,	ac.	to drive back.
1. représenter,	ac.	to represent.
1. réprimander,	ac.	to rebuke.
1. réprimer,	ge. ac.	to repress.
1. reprocher,	da. ac.	to reproach.
9. reproduire,	ac.	to reproduce.
1. répudier,	ac.	to divorce.
1. répugner,		to repugn.
1. repurger,	ac.	to purge again.
1. réputer,	ac.	to repute.
1. réserver,	ac.	to reserve.
1. résigner,	da. ac.	to resign.
1. résilier,	ac.	to cancel.
1. résister,	da.	to resist.
1. respecter,	ac.	to respect.
1. respirer,		to breathe.

1.	resssembler,	da.		to resemble.
3.	ressentir,	ac.		to feel.
1.	resserrer,	ac.		to tie tighter.
4.	se ressouvenir,	oe.		to remember.
1.	ressusciter,			to raise from the dead.
1.	restaurer,	ac.		to restore.
1.	rester			to stop.
1.	restituer,	da. ac.		to return.
1.	restreindre,	ac.		to limit.
1.	résulter,	oe.		to result from.
1.	résumer,	ac.		to recapitulate.
2.	rétablir,	ac.		to re-establish.
1.	retarder,	ac.		to put off.
4.	retenir,	ac.		to detain.
1.	retirer,	ac.		to draw.
1.	se retirer,			to withdraw.
1.	retomber,			to fall again.
10	retordre,	ac.		to twist again.
1.	retoucher,	ac.		to revise again.
1.	retourner,			to return.
1.	retracer,	ac.		to draw again.
1.	retrancher,	ac.		to diminish.
1.	se retrancher.			to intrench.
2.	rétrécir,	ac.		to make narrow.
1.	retrocéder,	ac.		to make over again.
1.	retrograder,			to retrograde.
1.	retrouver,	ac.		to find again.
1.	réveiller,	ac.		to awake.
1.	révéler	da. ac.		to reveal.
1.	révendiquer,	ac.		to claim.
10	revendre,	ac.		to sell again.
4.	revenir,			to come again.
1.	rêver,			to dream.
1.	réverbérer,	ac.		to reflect.
1.	révéler,	ac.		to honour.
2.	réunir,	da. ac.		to re-unite.
1.	se révolter,			to revolt.
1.	révoquer,	ac.		to repeal.
2.	réussir,			to succeed.
1.	rider,			to wrinkle.
1.	ridiculiser,	ac.		to laugh at.

1. rimer,	ac.	to rhyme.
1. réimprimer,	ac.	to reprint.
1. riposter,		to reply.
1. risquer,	ac.	to venture.
1. rissoler,	ac.	to roast brown.
1. river,	ac.	to rivet.
1. rogner,	ac.	to cut, to pare.
2. se roidir,		to be stiff.
10 rompre,	ac.	to break.
1. ronfler,		to snore.
1. ronger,	ac.	to gnaw.
2. rôti,	ac.	to roast.
2. rougir,		to blush, to redder.
1. rouler,	ac.	to roll.
2. rouffir,		to grow red.
1. ruiner.		to ruin.

S

1. Sabler,	ac.	to gravel.
1. sâbrer,	ac.	to cut with a hanger.
1. saccager,	ac.	to plunder.
1. sacrer,	ac.	to consecrate.
1. sacrifier,		to sacrifice.
1. saigner,	ac.	to let blood.
2. se saisir, ge.		to lay hold of.
2. salir,	ac.	to foul.
1. saluer,	ac.	to salute.
1. sanctifier,	ac.	to sanctify.
1. saper,	ac.	to sap.
1. sarcler,	ac.	to weed.
1. satyriser,	ac.	to satyrise.
6. satisfaire,	ac.	to satisfy.
1. sauter,	ac.	to leap, to jump.
1. sauver,	ac.	to save.
1. scandaliser,	ac.	to scandalise.
1. scier,	ac.	to saw.
1. sculpter,	ac.	to engrave.
1. sécher,	ac.	to dry.
1. séconder,	ac.	to help.
1. sécouer,	ac.	to shake.

9.	séduire,	ac.	to seduce.
1.	séjourner,		to stay in a place.
1.	sembler,		to seem.
1.	sémer,	ac.	to sow.
3.	sentir,	ac.	to feel, to smell.
1.	séquestrer,	ac.	to sequester.
1.	ferrer,		to squeeze.
3.	servir,	ac.	to serve.
1.	sévrer,	ac.	to wean.
1.	siffler,		to whistle.
1.	signaler,		to make famous.
1.	signer,	ac.	to subscribe.
1.	signifier,	da. ac.	to notify.
1.	solliciter,	ac.	to solicitate.
1.	sommeiller,		to slumber.
1.	sommer,	ac.	to summon.
1.	fonder,	ac.	to found.
1.	songer,	da.	to think.
1.	sonner,		to ring.
3.	sortir,		to go out.
1.	souffler,	ac.	to blow.
1.	souhaiter,	ac.	to wish.
1.	souiller,	ac.	to dirty.
1.	soulager,	ac.	to relieve.
1.	se souler,		to cloy one's self.
1.	soulever,	ac.	to raise.
1.	soupçonner,	ac.	to suspect.
1.	souper,		to sup.
1.	soupirer,		to sigh.
4.	soutenir,	ac.	to maintain.
4.	se souvenir,	ac.	to remember.
1.	spécifier,	ac.	to specify.
1.	statuer,		to ordain.
1.	stipuler,	ac.	to stipulate.
1.	stupéfier,		to stupefy.
1.	subdiviser,	ac.	to sub-divide.
2.	subir,	ac.	to undergo.
1.	submerger,		to sink.
1.	subordonner,	ac.	to subordinate.
1.	suborner,	ac.	to corrupt.
1.	subroger,	ac.	to substitute.

1. subsister,		to subsist.
1. substituer,	ac.	to substitute.
1. subtiliser,	ac.	to subtilize.
4. subvenir,	ac.	to relieve.
1. succéder,	da.	to succeed.
1. sucrer,	ac.	to sugar.
9. suffire,	da.	to suffice.
1. suffoquer,	ac.	to stifle.
1. suggérer,	ac.	to suggest.
1. supplanter,	ac.	to supplant.
1. suppléer,	da.	to supply.
1. supplier,	ac.	to intreat.
1. supporter,	ac.	to suffer, to bear up.
1. supposer,	ac.	to suppose.
1. supprimer,	ac.	to suppress.
1. supputer,	ac.	to compute.
1. surcharger,	ac.	to over charge.
6. surfaire,	ac.	to exact.
1. surmonter,	ac.	to excel.
1. surnager,		to swim over.
1. surpasser,	ac.	to excel.
10. suspendre,	ac.	to hang up.
1. sustenter,	ac.	to maintain.
1. sympathiser,		to sympathize.

T,

1. Tacher,	ac.	to stain.
1. tâcher,		to endeavour.
1. tacheter,	ac.	to speckle.
1. tailler,	ac.	to cut out.
1. tamiser,	ac.	to sift.
1. taner,	ac.	to tan.
1. tapisser,	ac.	to furnish with hangings.
1. tarder,		to delay.
2. tarir,		to dry up.
1. tasser,	ac.	to heap up.
1. tâter,	ac.	to feel.
1. taxer,	ac.	to tax.
7. teindre,	ac.	to dye.
1. tempérer,	ac.	to allay.

N n

1. temporiser,		to delay.
10. tendre,	ac.	to bend.
4. tenir,	ac.	to hold.
1. tenter,	ac.	to tempt.
1. tergiverser,		to shift.
1. terminer,	ac.	to terminate.
1. terrasser,	ac.	to throw down.
1. tirer,	ac.	to draw.
1. tirer,		to shoot.
1. toiser,	ac.	to measure.
1. tolérer,	ac.	to tolerate.
1. tomber,		to fall.
10. tondre,	ac.	to shear.
1. tonner,		to thunder.
1. toucher,	ac.	to touch.
1. tourmenter,	ac.	to plague.
1. tourner,	ac.	to turn round.
1. tournoyer,		to whirl about.
1. tousser,	ac.	to cough.
1. tracer,	ac.	to draw.
9. traduire,	ac.	to translate.
1. trafiquer,		to trade.
2. trahir,	ac.	to betray.
1. traîner	ac.	to drag along.
1. traiter,	ac.	to treat.
1. tramer,	ac.	to plot.
1. trancher,	ac.	to cut off.
1. tranquilliser,	ac.	to quiet.
1. transférer,	ac.	to transfer.
1. transformer,	ac.	to transform.
1. transgresser,	ge. ac.	to transgress.
1. transiger,		to transact.
1. transpirer,		to transpire.
1. transplantier,	ac.	to transplant.
1. transporter,	ac.	to transfer.
1. transposer,	ac.	to transpose.
1. transvaser,	ac.	to decant.
1. travailler,		to work.
1. traverser,	ac.	to cross.
2. se travestir,		to disguise one's self.

1. trébucher,		<i>to stumble.</i>
1. trembler,		<i>to shiver.</i>
1. tremper,	ac.	<i>to dip.</i>
1. trépaner,	ac.	<i>to trepan.</i>
1. tricoter,		<i>to knit.</i>
1. triompher,		<i>to triumph.</i>
1. tripler,		<i>to treble.</i>
1. tromper,	ac.	<i>to deceive.</i>
1. tronquer,	ac.	<i>to mutilate.</i>
1. troquer,	ac.	<i>to barter.</i>
1. trotter,		<i>to trot.</i>
1. troubler,	ac.	<i>to trouble.</i>
1. trouver,	ac.	<i>to find out.</i>
1. tutoyer,	ac.	<i>to thou.</i>
1. tyranniser,	ac.	<i>to oppress.</i>

V.

1. vaciller,		<i>to stagger.</i>
1. vanter,	ac.	<i>to commend.</i>
1. se vanter,	ge.	<i>to boast.</i>
1. végéter,		<i>to vegetate.</i>
1. veiller,		<i>to watch.</i>
10. vendre,	ac.	<i>to sell.</i>
4. venir,		<i>to come.</i>
1. venter,		<i>to blow.</i>
2. verdir,		<i>to become green.</i>
1. vergetter,		<i>to brush.</i>
1. vérifier,		<i>to verify.</i>
2. vernir,	ac.	<i>to varnish.</i>
1. verniffer,	ac.	<i>to varnish.</i>
1. vexer,	ac.	<i>to vex.</i>
1. vicier,		<i>to vitiate.</i>
1. vuidier,	ac.	<i>to empty.</i>
2. vieillir,		<i>to grow old.</i>
1. violer,	ac.	<i>to transgress, to violate.</i>
1. viser,	na.	<i>to aim at.</i>
1. vitrer,	ac.	<i>to glaze.</i>
1. ulcérer,		<i>to ulcerate.</i>
2. unir,	ac.	<i>to unite.</i>

1. voler,	to fly, to rob.
1. vouer,	to devote.
1. user,	to use.
1. user,	to wear off.



CONTAINING THE FIRST PERSON OF ALL TENSES.

TABLE THE SECOND.

**SHEWING HOW TO FIND ALL THE PERSONS
OF A TENSE, THE FIRST PERSON AND THE
GERUND BEING KNOWN.**

RULE I.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

If the first person sing. ends in *e* the second takes an *s*, and the third is like the first as, *j'aime, tu aimes, il aime*. No exceptions.

If the first ends in *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third changes *s* or *x* into *t* as, *jè lis, tu, lis, il lit: je veux, tu veux, il veut*: however *s* is lost in the third person when it is preceded by *c*, *d* or *t* in the first. Exam. *Je crains, tu crains, il craint: je perds, tu perds, il perd: je mets, tu mets, il met.*

The three persons Plural are formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ons*, *ex*, *ent* and *yant* into *yons*, *yex* *yent*, as *parlant*, *voyant* ger. *Nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*. *Nous voyons*, *vous voyez*, *ils voient* ind. pl.

Exceptions. — 9. *all.*

Exceptions. 1°. *Aller* makes *je vais*, *tu vas*, *il va*, *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*. 2°. *Avoir* makes *j'ai*, *tu as*, *il a*, *nous avons*, *vous avez*, *ils ont*. 3°. *Etre* makes, *je suis*, *tu es*, *il est*, *nous sommes*, *vous êtes*, *ils sont*. 4°. *Faire* and its compound make *vous faites*, *ils font* in the second and third persons pl. 5°. *Dire* and *redire* make *vous dites* and *vous redites* in the second pl. 6°. The verbs *boire*, *mourir*, *pouvoir*, *prendre*, *recevoir*, *savoir*, *tenir*, *vouloir*, and those conjugated after them, make in the third person pl. *ils boivent*, *ils meurent*, *ils peuvent*, *ils prennent*, *ils reçoivent*, *ils savent*, *ils tiennent*, *ils veulent* and not *ils buvent*, *ils mourrent* &c.

RULE II.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

The first and second persons pl. of the subj. are formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ions* and *iez* as, *chantant* ger. *nous chantions*, *vous chantiez* pl. subj.

Exceptions. The verb *aller* has the subj. *allant* and *allant*.

Exceptions. The verb *être* makes *nous soyons, vous soyez*; the verb *faire* and its compounds make *nous fassions, vous fussiez*.

RULE III.

IMPERATIVE

The second person sing. the first and second pl. of the imperative have no nominative case; but except that, they are like the same persons of the present ind. as *tu agis, nous agissons, vous agissez* ind. *agis, agissons, agissez*, imperative. The third persons of both numbers are invariably like the third of the subj. present.

Exceptions. 1°. The verbs of the first conjugation have no *s* in the second person sing. 2°. The verbs *avoir*, *être*, *savoir* and *vouloir* have all persons of the imperat. like the fame of the subj. present.

RULE IV.

The Persons of the Imperfect, Preterite, Future, Conditional, Present, and Preterite of the subjunctive, are formed from the first, by changing the final as follows, for each tense and person.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ois, Singular. - Plural.
ois, oit, ions, icz, oient.

PRETERITE INDICATIVE.

{	ai,	as,	a,	âmes,	âtes	êrent.
	ins,	ins,	int,	îmes,	întes,	îrent.
	is,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
	us,	us,	ut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront.

CONDITIONAL.

rois, rois, roit, rions, riez, roient.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

e, es, e, *see rule 2* ent.

PRETERITE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

{	asse,	asses,	ât,	assions,	assiez,	assent.
	inffe,	inffes,	înt,	inffions,	inffiez,	inffent.
	iffe,	iffes,	ît	iffions,	iffiez,	iffent.
	uffe,	uffes,	ût,	uffions,	uffiez,	uffent.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Aux.	Avoir	to have,	ayant,	eu,	j'ai,	j'av-ois,	j'ens,	j'au-rai,	j'au-rois,	j'ai-e,	j'e-usse,
1.	Abfoudre	to be,	étant,	été,	je suis,	j'ét-ois,	je f-us,	je fer-ai,	je fe-rois,	je sois,	je f-usse,
2.	Acquérir	to acquire,	abfolvant,	abfous,	j'abfou-s,	j'abfolv-ois,	wanted,	j'abfoud-rai,	j'abfoud-rois,	j'abfolv-e,	wanted,
3.	Aller	to go,	acquérant,	acquis,	j'acquier-s,	j'acquér-ois,	j'acqu-is,	j'acquerrai,	j'acquerrais,	j'acquier-e,	j'acquiffe,
4.	S'affoir	to fit,	allant,	allé,	je vais,	j'all-ois,	j'all-ai,	j'i-rai,	j'i-rois,	j'aill-e,	j'all-isse,
5.	Boire	to drink,	s'afficiant,	afsis,	je m'affie-ds,	je m'affé-ois,	je m'aff-is,	je m'affie-rai,	je m'affie-rois,	je m'affé-e,	je m'affé-isse,
6.	Bouillir	to boil,	buvant,	bu,	je boi-s,	je buv-ois,	je b-us,	je boi-rai,	je boi-rois,	je boiv-e,	je b-uffe,
7.	Conclure	to conclude,	bouillant,	bouilli,	je bou-s,	je bouill-ois,	je bouill-is,	je bouill-rai,	je bouill-rois,	je bouill-e,	je bouill-iffe.
8.	Confire	to pickle,	concluant,	conclus,	je conclu-s,	je conclu-ois,	je concl-us,	je conf-rai,	je conf-rois,	je concl-e,	je concl-uffe.
9.	Coudre	to sew,	confifant,	confi,	je confi-s,	je confil-ois,	je confil-us,	je conf-rai,	je conf-rois,	je conf-e,	je conf-uffe.
10.	Courir	to run,	coufant,	coufu,	je cou-s,	je couf-ois,	je couf-is,	je coud-rai,	je coud-rois,	je couf-e,	je couf-uffe.
11.	Croire	to believe,	courant,	couru,	je cour-s,	je cour-ois,	je cour-us,	je coud-rai,	je coud-rois,	je cour-e,	je cour-uffe.
12.	Cueillir	to gather,	croyant,	cru,	je croi-s,	je croy-ois,	je croi-us,	je croi-rai,	je croi-rois,	je croi-e,	je croi-uffe.
13.	Dire	to say,	cueillant,	cueilli,	je cueill-e,	je cueill-ois,	je cueill-is,	je cueille-rai,	je cueille-rois,	je cueill-e,	je cueill-iffé.
14.	Ecrire	to write,	difant,	dit,	je di-s,	je dif-ois,	je di-is,	je di-rai,	je di-rois,	je dif-e,	je dif-iffé.
15.	Envoyer	to fend,	écrivant,	écrit,	j'écri-s,	j'écrit-ois,	j'écrit-is,	j'écrai-rai,	j'écrai-rois,	j'écrit-e,	j'écrit-iffé.
16.	Fuir	to foun,	envoyant	envoyé.	j'envoi-e,	j'envoy-ois,	j'envoy-ai,	j'enver-rai,	j'enver-rois,	j'envoi-e,	j'envoy-iffé.
17.	Hair	to hate,	fuyant,	fui,	je fui-s,	je fui-ois,	je fui-is,	je fui-rai,	je fui-rois,	je fui-e,	j'envoy-iffé.
18.	Lire	to read,	haiffant,	hai,	je hai-s,	je haiff-ois,	wanted,	je haï-rai,	je haï-rois,	je haï-e,	wanted.
19.	Mettre	to put,	lifant,	lu,	je li-s,	je lif-ois,	je l-us,	je li-rai,	je li-rois,	je lif-e,	je l-uffe.
20.	Moudre	to grind,	mettant,	mis,	je me-ts,	je mett-ois,	je m-is,	je mett-rai,	je mett-rois,	je mett-e,	je m-iffé.
21.	Mourir	to die,	moulant,	moulu,	je mou-s,	je moull-ois,	je moul-us,	je mour-rai,	je mour-rois,	je moull-e,	je mour-uffé.
22.	Naître	to be born,	mourant,	mort,	je meur-s,	je mour-ois,	je mour-us,	je mour-rai,	je mour-rois,	je meur-e,	je mour-iffé.
23.	Offrir	to offer,	naiffant,	né,	je nai-s,	je naiff-ois,	je naqu-is,	je nait-rai,	je nait-rois,	je naiff-e,	je nait-iffé.
24.	Paitre	to graze,	offrant,	offert,	j'offr-e,	j'offri-ois,	j'offri-ois,	j'offrai-rai,	j'offrai-rois,	j'offr-e,	wanted.
25.	Paire	to please,	paiffant,	pu,	je pai-s,	je paiff-ois,	wanted,	je pait-rai,	je pait-rois,	je paiff-e,	je pl-uffe.
26.	Pourvoir	to provide,	plaiffant,	plu,	je plai-s,	je plaiff-ois,	je pl-us,	je plai-rai,	je plai-rois,	je plaiff-e,	je pl-uffe.
27.	Pouvoir	to be able,	pouvoyant,	pourvu,	je pouv-ois,	je pouvoy-ois,	je p-us,	je pourvai-rai,	je pourvoi-rois,	je pourvoi-e,	je pourv-uffe.
28.	Prendre	to take,	pouvant,	pu,	je peu-s,	je pouv-ois,	je pr-is,	je prend-rai,	je prend-rois,	je puiff-e,	je p-uffe.
29.	Prévoir	to foresee,	prenant,	pris,	je pren-ds,	je pren-ois,	je prév-is,	je prévoi-rai,	je prévoi-rois,	je prenn-e,	je prév-iffé.
30.	Réfoudre	to refolve,	prévoyant,	prévu,	je prévoi-s,	je prévoy-ois,	je réf-ol-us,	je réf-oud-rai,	je réf-oud-rois,	je réf-ol-e,	je réf-ol-uffe.
31.	Revêtir	to revest,	réfolvant,	réfolu,	je réfol-ds,	je réfolv-ois,	je revêt-ois,	je revêti-rai,	je revêti-rois,	je revêt-e,	je revêt-iffé.
32.	Rire	to laugh,	revêtant,	revêtu,	je revê-ts,	je revê-ois,	je r-is,	je r-ai,	je r-ai,	je r-ai,	je r-iffé.
33.	Savoir	to know,	riant,	ri,	je ri-s,	je ri-ois,	je r-us,	je rai-rai,	je rai-rois,	je ri-e,	je f-uffe.
34.	Suivre	to follow,	fachant,	fu,	je fai-s,	je fav-ois,	je fuiv-is,	je fuiv-rai,	je fuiv-rois,	je fach-e,	je fuiv-iffé.
35.	Traire	to milk,	fuiant,	fuivi,	je fui-s,	je fuiv-ois,	wanted,	je trai-rai,	je trai-rois,	je fuiv-e,	wanted.
36.	Vaincre	to vanquish,	trayant,	trait,	je trai-s,	je tray-ois,	je vainqu-is,	je vaud-rai,	je vaud-rois,	je vainqu-e,	je vainqu-iffé.
37.	Valoir	to be worth,	vainquant,	vaincu,	je vain-cs,	je vainqu-ois,	je val-us,	je vaud-rai,	je vaud-rois,	je vaill-e,	je val-uffe.
38.	Vivre	to live,	valant,	valu,	je vau-x,	je viv-ois,	je véc-us,	je viv-rai,	je viv-rois,	je viv-e,	je véc-uffe.
39.	Voir	to fee,	vivant,	vécu,	je vi-s,	je voi-s,	je v-ai,	je ver-rai,	je ver-rois,	je voi-e,	je v-iffé.
40.	Vouloir	to be willing,	voyant,	vu,	je ven-x,	je v-ai,	je v-ai,	je vould-rai,	je vould-rois,	je veuill-e,	je vould-uffe.
	Falloir	to be necessary,	wanted,	wanted,	il faut,	il falloit,	il fallut,	il faudra,	il faudroit,	il faille,	il fallût.
	Pleuvr	to rain,	wanted,	wanted,	il pleut,	il pleuvoit,	il plut,	il pleuv-ra,	il pleuv-roit,	il pleuve,	il plût.

THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR VERBS ARE CONJUGATED AFTER THOSE ABOVE WHICH BEAR THE SAME NUMERICAL FIGURE.

35. Abstraire,	to abstract.	19. Se démettre,	to resign.	19. Omettre,	to omit.	20. Remoudre,	to grind again.
10. Accourir,	to run to.	25. Déplaître,	to displeas.	23. Ouvrir,	to open.	22. Renaitre,	to be born again.
12. Accueillir,	to welcome.	28. Désapprendre,	to unlearn.	28. Se méprendre,	to mistake.	15. Renvoyer,	to send back.
19. Admettre,	to admit.	10. Discourir,	to discourse.	10. Parcourir,	to run over.	38. Reprendre,	to take again.
28. Apprendre,	to learn.	1. Diffoudre,	to dissolve.	34. Pourfuivre,	to pursue.	38. Revivre,	to revive.
14. Circonscrire,	to circumscribe.	35. Distraire,	to distract.	13. Prédire,	to fore-tell.	39. Revir,	to see again.
19. Commettre,	to commit.	18. Elire,	to elect.	14. Prescrire,	to prescribe.	23. Rouvrir,	to open again.
25. Complaire,	to please.	20. Emoudre,	to sharpen.	14. Proscrire,	to proscrib.	10. Secourir,	to relieve.
28. Comprendre,	to understand.	10. Encourir,	to incur.	37. Prévaloir,	to prevail.	2. S'enquérir,	to inquire.
19. Se compromettre,	to expose one's self.	19. S'entremettre,	to interpose.	19. Promettre,	to promise.	23. Souffrir,	to suffer.
10. Concourir,	to concur.	28. Entreprendre,	to undertake.	28. Rapprendre,	to learn again.	19. Soumettre,	to submit.
2. Conquérir,	to conquer.	39. Entrevoir,	to have a glimpse.	2. Reconquerir,	to conquer again.	14. Souffrir,	to subscribe.
13. Contredire,	to contradict.	23. Entrouvrir,	to open a little.	9. Récoudre,	to sew again.	32. Sourire,	to smile.
36. Convaincre,	to convince.	37. Equivaloir,	to be equal.	10. Recourir,	to have recourse.	35. Soustraire,	to subtract.
23. Couvrir,	to cover.	7. Exclure,	to exclude.	23. Recouvrir,	to new-cover.	28. Surprendre,	to surprise.
9. Découdre,	to unsew.	35. Extraire,	to extract.	14. Récire,	to write over.	38. Survivre,	to outlive.
23. Découvrir,	to discover.	14. Infcrire,	to inscribe.	12. Recueillir,	to gather.	25. Taire,	to conceal.
13. Dédire,	to unsay.	13. Interdire,	to interdict.	13. Redire,	to say again.	14. Transcrire,	to transcribe.
14. Décrire,	to describe.	13. Maudire,	Ger. maudissant.	18. Relire,	to read over.	19. Transmettre,	to transmit.
19. Démettre,	to put out.	13. Médire,	to slander.	19. Remettre,	to put again.		

OBSERVATIONS.

All Verbs of good use which are not mentioned among the irregular, are conjugated after one of the ten regular verbs, placed at the head of the first table.

The Verbs which end in *er* in the infinitive, are conjugated after *parler*; those which end in *cir, dir, gir, or mir* are conjugated after *agir*, when their gerund ends in *issant*; those which end in *enir* after *tenir*; those in *ezoir* after *recevoir*; those in *aire*, preceded by *f*, after *faire*; those in *aindre, eindre or oindre* after *craindre*; those in *oître* after *emmoir*; those in *uire* after *influire*, and those in *endre, ondre or aître* after *vendre*. *Prendre* and its compounds ex-

These two Tables, if particularly attended to, will prove very useful to those who learn, or have already learnt French, and are not perfect in it. The second is very easy and should be learnt by heart; the difficulties of the first will be soon removed, if you observe 1°. that the imperfect is formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ois*, 2°. that the future is usually formed from the infinitive present, by adding *ai* to the last consonant, 3°. that the conditional is formed from the future by changing the final *rai* into *rais*, 4°. that the present of the subj. is most frequently formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *e* mute, 5°. that the preterite of the subj. is formed from the second person sing. of the preterite of the indicative by adding *se* to the final.

A

TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Pag.
T HE true definition of Grammar.	1
Division of this work.	ibid.

PART I. OF PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I. Of pronunciation.	2
Of the french alphabet.	ibid.
Of the french accents.	3
Of vowels.	5
Of diphthongs.	6
Of consonants.	7
Remarks on the pronunciation of verbs.	12
CHAPTER II. Of orthography.	13
Of the apostrophe and its use.	14
Of hyphens and cedilla.	15
Of parenthesis, quotations and abbreviations.	16
Of the different sorts of punctuation.	ibid.
Of capital letters and their use.	18
An alphabetical series of kingdoms, provinces & towns which have a different denomination in french and in english.	18
A method to learn the french denomination for the proper name of persons taken from latin or greek.	20
A method to learn easily a great collection of french words.	21

PART SECOND. DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I. Of the french articles.	24
CHAPTER II. Of substantives.	ibid.
Of the number and species of substantives.	25

Table of the Contents.

<i>Of the declension of nouns.</i>	25
<i>How to distinguish when a noun is masc. or fem.</i>	27
<i>Of substantives masculine in one signification and fem. in the other.</i>	33
<i>Rules to form the plural of nouns.</i>	35
<i>Of substantives which have no plural.</i>	37
<i>Of substantives which have no singular.</i>	38
CHAPTER III. Of adjectives, and how to form their fem.	39
<i>Of the plural of adjectives.</i>	41
<i>Of comparatives and superlatives.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of cardinal numbers.</i>	43
<i>Of ordinal numbers.</i>	45
CHAPTER IV. Of personal pronouns.	47
<i>Of possessive pronouns.</i>	49
<i>Of demonstrative pronouns.</i>	51
<i>Of relative pronouns.</i>	51
<i>Of interrogative pronouns.</i>	53
<i>Of indeterminate pronouns.</i>	54
CHAPTER V. Of verbs and their species.	55
<i>Of moods, tenses, numbers and persons of verbs.</i>	57
<i>Conjugation of the auxiliary avoir.</i>	58
<i>Conjugation of the auxiliary être.</i>	60
<i>Verbs conjugated with to have in english and with être in french.</i>	61
<i>Of the regular conjugations.</i>	63
<i>Conjugation of reflected verbs.</i>	78
<i>Observations on the reflected verbs.</i>	81
<i>Verbs reflected in french.</i>	82
<i>Several manners of conjugating a verb.</i>	83
<i>Conjugation of the irregular verbs.</i>	83
<i>A new method to learn easily all verbs regular and irregular.</i>	102
<i>Of ad-verbs.</i>	105
<i>Of prepositions.</i>	107
<i>Of conjunctions.</i>	111
<i>Of interjections.</i>	113

PART III. OF SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I. Use of the french articles.	114
<i>Articles used in french and in english.</i>	115
<i>Articles used in french and not in english.</i>	116

Table of the Contents.

<i>Articles used in english and not in french.</i>	118
<i>No article used either in french or in english.</i>	120
CHAPTER II. Syntax of substantives.	123
CHAPTER III. Syntax of adjectives.	123
Of the Concord and position of adjectives.	125
Of the government of adjectives.	125
Of the adjectives of dimension.	128
Of comparatives and superlatives.	129
CHAPTER IV. Of personal and impersonal pronouns.	133
When they are conjunctive or disjunctive.	<i>ibid.</i>
Of the impersonal pronouns it, they, them.	136
Of the right placing of pronouns.	139
When the personal pronouns are to be repeated.	142
Distinction between lui, elle, and soi.	143
CHAPTER V. Of possessive pronouns.	144
CHAPTER VI. Of demonstrative pronouns.	146
CHAPTER VII. Of relative pronouns.	151
CHAPTER VIII. Of interrogative pronouns.	154
CHAPTER IX. Different sorts of interrogations.	157
CHAPTER X. Different species of que.	159
CHAPTER XI. Of indeterminate pronouns.	161
Of tout and its various constructions.	165
Of the different sorts of quelque.	167
CHAPTER XII. Several modes of negations.	172
Distinction between pas and point.	175
Negative expressions in french and not in english.	176
Syntax of verbs.	177
CHAPTER XIII. of the government of verbs.	178
CHAPTER XIV. of the infinitive mood.	183
Of the gerund.	189
Of the participle.	191
Concord of verbs with their nominative case.	193
CHAPTER XV. of the indicative mood.	195
CHAPTER XVI. Of the use of the subjunctive.	200
Words which govern always the subjunctive.	<i>ibid.</i>
Words which govern sometimes the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive.	203
Which tense of the subjunctive must be used.	207
CHAPTER XVII. Of the irregular verbs.	208
CHAPTER XVIII. Of the impersonal verbs.	211
CHAPTER XIX. Syntax of Adverbs.	214

Table of the Contents.

<i>CHAPTER XX. Syntax of Prepositions.</i>	215
<i>CHAPTER XXI. Which parts of speech agree together.</i>	217
<i>In which order must be placed the words of a sentence.</i>	219
<i>Which words must be repeated in french.</i>	221
<i>Which may be elegantly repeated.</i>	222
<i>CHAPTER XXII. Of the french idioms.</i>	224
<i>A series of the most curious french idioms.</i>	230
<i>CHAPTER XXIII. the french proverbs most in use.</i>	232
<i>CHAPTER XXIV. Distinction in french between some words which are expressed in the same manner in english.</i>	237
<i>An alphabetical series of the french verbs most in use.</i>	242

THE END.

15
17
19
21
22
24
30
32
ds
37
42



